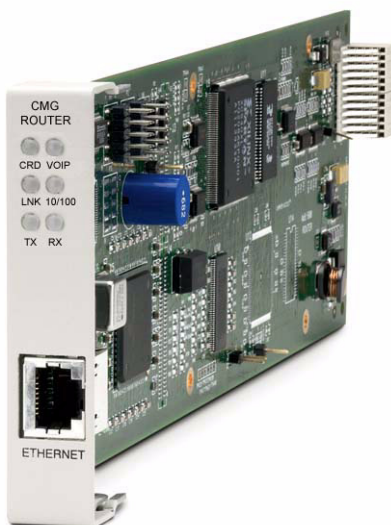




CMG Router

MENU-DRIVEN USER INTERFACE

USER MANUAL



Part Number: 770-0080-BL

Product Release: 2.97

August 2009

Copyright © 2009 Force10 Networks Inc. All rights reserved.

Force10 Networks® reserves the right to change, modify, revise this publication without notice.

The hardware and software described herein are furnished under a license or non-disclosure agreement. The hardware, software, and manual may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of this agreement. It is against the law to reproduce, transmit, transcribe, store in a retrieval system, or translate into any medium - electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise - any part of this manual or software supplied with the product for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the express written permission of Force10 Networks Inc.

Trademarks

Adit and Force10 Networks are registered trademarks of Force10 Networks, Inc. Force10 and the Force10 logo are trademarks of Force10 Networks, Inc. or its affiliates in the United States and other countries and are protected by U.S. and international copyright laws. All other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Statement of Conditions

In the interest of improving internal design, operational function, and/or reliability, Force10 Networks reserves the right to make changes to products described in this document without notice. Force10 Networks does not assume any liability that may occur due to the use or application of the product(s) described herein.

Corporate Contact Information:

Force10 Networks, Inc.
350 Holger Way
San Jose, CA 95134-1362
Phone: +1 (866) 571-2600 or +1 (408) 571-3500
www.Force10Networks.com

Technical Assistance Center:

E-mail: access-support@Force10Networks.com
Phone: (US) 866-887-4638
Phone (International/Direct): 1-707-665-4355

Supporting Software Versions:

CMG Router Release 2.97
Adit 600 Controller Release 10.1.1

PREFACE

Warranty

Force10 Networks, Inc. warrants to BUYER that Product Hardware will be free from substantial defect in material and workmanship under normal use in accordance with its Documentation and given proper installation and maintenance for period of five years from the date of shipment by Force10 Networks.

Force10 Networks warrants that the Licensed Software, when used as permitted under its License Terms and in accordance with the instructions and configurations described in the Documentation (including use on Force10 Networks product or a computer hardware and operating system platform supported by Force10 Networks), will operate substantially as described in the Documentation for a period of ninety (90) days after date of shipment of the Licensed Software to BUYER.

This warranty shall not apply to Products or Software that have been either resold or transferred from BUYER to any other party. Any such transfer voids the above warranty and related licenses. Force10 Networks offers expanded product care beyond what is covered by the warranty through different support plans. The plans are designed to maximize network availability through advance replacement for defective equipment. Please contact your Force10 Networks representative for support program details.

Warranty Procedure

BUYER must promptly notify Force10 Networks of any defect in the Product or Software and comply with Force10 Networks' return/repair policy and procedures. Force10 Networks or its agent will have the right to inspect the Product or workmanship on BUYER's premises. With respect to a warranty defect in Product hardware reported to Force10 Networks by BUYER during the warranty period, Force10 Networks, as its sole obligation and BUYER's exclusive remedy for any breach of warranty, will use commercially reasonable efforts, at its option, to:

- a. repair, replace, or service at its factory or on the BUYER's premises the Product, or component therein, or workmanship found to be defective so that the Product hardware operates substantially in accordance with Force10 Networks Documentation; or
- b. credit BUYER for the Product in accordance with Force10 Networks' depreciation policy.

Preface

With respect to a warranty defect in the Licensed Software reported to Force10 Networks by BUYER during the 90-day software warranty period, Force10 Networks, at its own expense and as its sole obligation and BUYER's exclusive remedy for any breach of the software warranty, will use commercially reasonable efforts to, at its option,

- a. correct any reproducible error in the Licensed Software, or
- b. replace the defective Licensed Software, as follows:
 - Should a Severity 1 or 2 warranty defect with the Software occur during the 90-day warranty period, Force10 Networks will provide, in its sole determination, either
 1. software to resolve the defect to be downloaded into the affected units by the BUYER or
 2. a documented workaround to address the issue.

Severity 1 issues are failures of the Licensed Software to comply with the Force10 Networks software specifications and that completely or severely affect the Force10 Networks Product and its traffic or service capacity, or maintenance or monitoring capabilities.

Severity 2 issues are failures of the Licensed Software to comply with the Force10 Networks software specifications and that result in a major degradation of the Force10 Networks Product so as to impact its system or service performance, or significant impairments to network operator control or effectiveness. Should a Severity 3 warranty defect with the Licensed Software occur during the 90-day warranty period, Force10 Networks will provide assistance to Buyer to determine if a solution or workaround will be provided in a subsequent software release following the reported issue.

Severity 3 issues are defined as failures of the Licensed Software to comply with the Force10 Networks software specifications but that do not significantly impair the function or service of the Force10 Networks Product or the system.

Determination of Severity 1, 2 or 3 shall be made solely by Force10 Networks following receipt of the reported problem. Refurbished material may be used to repair or replace the Product.

BUYER shall bear the risk of loss for Products or Software returned to Force10 Networks for repair, replacement, or service, and the same must be shipped pre-paid by BUYER.

Requests for warranty services and troubleshooting must be made to, and will be provided by, the Force10 Networks Customer Support Center via telephone during the warranty period and during normal business hours. Normal business hours for Force10 Networks Customer Support Center are 7:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. Mountain Standard Time, Monday through Friday, excluding weekends and standard Force10 Networks recognized holidays.

Limitation of Warranty & Limitation of Remedies

Correction of defects by repair, replacement, or service will be at Force10 Networks' option and constitute Force10 Networks' sole obligation and BUYER's sole and exclusive remedy under the limited warranty. Any such error correction or replacement provided to BUYER does not extend the original warranty period for hardware or software, respectively.

Force10 Networks assumes no warranty or other liability with respect to defects in the Product or Software caused by:

- a. modification, repair, storage, installation, operation, or maintenance of the Product or Software by anyone other than Force10 Networks or its agent, or as authorized and in accordance with the Force10 Networks Documentation; or
- b. the negligent, unlawful or other improper use or storage of the Product or Software, including its use with incompatible equipment or software; or
- c. fire, explosion, power failures, acts of God, or any other cause beyond Force10 Networks' reasonable control; or
- d. handling or transportation after title of the Product passes to BUYER.

Other manufacturer's equipment or software purchased by Force10 Networks and resold to BUYER will be limited to that manufacturer's warranty. Force10 Networks assumes no warranty liability for other manufacturer's equipment or software furnished by BUYER.

BUYER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES AS FOLLOWS: Except for the limited warranty set forth above, the Product, License Software and all services performed by Force10 Networks hereunder are provided "as is," without representations or warranties of any kind. Force10 Networks does not warrant that the Product, License Software, any hardware or software, or any update, upgrade, fix or workaround furnished to BUYER will meet BUYER's requirements, that the operation thereof, including any maintenance or major releases thereto will be uninterrupted or error-free.

THE WARRANTIES IN THIS AGREEMENT REPLACE ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, AND ALL OTHER OBLIGATIONS OR LIABILITIES OF FORCE10 NETWORKS, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NONINFRINGEMENT AND/OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARISING OUT OF COURSE OF PERFORMANCE OR COURSE OF DEALING. ALL OTHER WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED AND EXCLUDED BY FORCE10 NETWORKS.

THE REMEDIES CONTAINED IN THIS AGREEMENT WILL BE THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, AND FORCE10 NETWORKS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INJURIES OR DAMAGES TO PERSONS OR PROPERTY RESULTING FROM ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, WITH THE EXCEPTION OF INJURIES OR DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE GROSS NEGLIGENCE OF FORCE10 NETWORKS. THIS LIMITATION APPLIES TO ALL SERVICES, SOFTWARE, AND PRODUCTS DURING AND AFTER THE WARRANTY PERIOD. IN NO EVENT WILL FORCE10 NETWORKS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, LOSS OF DATA, OR COMMERCIAL LOSSES EVEN IF FORCE10 NETWORKS HAS BEEN ADVISED THEREOF.

Preface

No agent, BUYER, or representative is authorized to make any warranties on behalf of Force10 Networks or to assume for Force10 Networks any other liability in connection with any of Force10 Networks' Products, software, or services.

The foregoing summarizes Force10 Networks' entire product and software warranties, which are subject to change without notice.

Warranty Product Returns

Before returning any equipment to Force10 Networks, Inc., first contact the distributor or dealer from which you purchased the product.

A Return Material Authorization (RMA) number is required for all equipment returned to Force10 Networks, Inc. Call Force10 Networks Customer Support at 1-866-887-4638 (US) or 1-707-665-4355 (International/Direct) for RMA number, repair/warranty information and shipping instructions. Be prepared to provide the following information:

- Force10 Networks serial number(s) from the system chassis or circuit card(s)
- Name of distributor or dealer from which you purchased the product
- Description of defect

Notices

This manual contains important information and warnings that must be followed to ensure safe operation of the equipment.

DANGER! A *DANGER* NOTICE INDICATES THE PRESENCE OF A HAZARD THAT CAN OR WILL CAUSE DEATH OR SEVERE PERSONAL INJURY IF THE HAZARD IS NOT AVOIDED.

CAUTION! A *CAUTION* NOTICE INDICATES THE POSSIBILITY OF INTERRUPTING NETWORK SERVICE IF THE HAZARD IS NOT AVOIDED.

WARNING! A *WARNING* NOTICE INDICATES THE POSSIBILITY OF EQUIPMENT DAMAGE IF THE HAZARD IS NOT AVOIDED.

NOTE: A *Note* indicates information to help you understand how to perform a procedure or how the system works. Notes should be read before performing the required action.

Preface

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface

Warranty	iii
Warranty Procedure	iii
Limitation of Warranty & Limitation of Remedies	v
Warranty Product Returns	vi
Notices	vii

1 Introduction

Overview	1-2
Installation	1-2
Install a Router Card	1-2
Install Country Specific Ringer Tones	1-2
Maneuvering in the System	1-3
Fields	1-4
Scroll Field	1-4
Select Field	1-4
Edit Field	1-4
Help Bar	1-5
Connecting to the Router	1-6
Establish a Telnet Session	1-6
Set a New Password	1-7

2 Management Window

Management Overview	2-2
System Time/Login	2-3
System Date and Time	2-4
Daylight Savings Time Adjustment	2-5
Auto-Logout Timer	2-5
View Password	2-5
Config Password	2-5
Admin Password	2-5
Enhanced Security	2-6
Upload/Download	2-8
To Set Up the Router for Uploads/Downloads	2-9
Upload/Download Setup Menu Fields	2-12
Load Defaults	2-14
Software Images	2-15

3 Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

Overview	3-2
Configuration	3-2
RIP Mode Receive	3-4
RIP Mode Send	3-4
Trunk	3-4
Security	3-8
SNMP	3-12
DNS Proxy	3-17
Spanning Tree Protocol	3-19
Network Time Protocol	3-21
SysLog	3-24
DNS Resolver	3-26
Quality of Service	3-31
MGCP	3-34
VoIP	3-42
Voice Channels	3-47
Dial Plan	3-52
AIS Feature	3-54

4 Profile Directory:Local Profile

Overview	4-2
LAN (Local) Profile Setup	4-4
To Set Up a Local Profile:	4-5
LAN IP:	4-8
LAN IPX:	4-8
Setup < >	4-9
Link Speed	4-10
Static Networks	4-11
To Set Up Static Networks.	4-13
Static Addresses	4-18
Filters.	4-22
To Define and Enable Filters:	4-22
Defining Custom Filters.	4-26
Defining Protocol Filters	4-28
Defining Address Filters	4-30
Firewall Filters (Local Profile)	4-32
Advertise Network/Server.	4-40
IPX Server Advertising	4-44
DHCP Server/Client/Relay	4-46
LAN Collision Threshold	4-54
Spanning Tree	4-57
Secondary IP Address	4-60
Link Speed.	4-63

5 Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Remote (WAN) Profile Overview.	5-2
Transmission Options	5-6
Security/Options	5-16
Static/VPN Networks	5-19
GRE Tunnel set to <All>.	5-21
GRE Tunnel set to <By Network>.	5-23
Static NAT Addresses.	5-27
NAT Bypass Subnets	5-30

Table of Contents

Static Addresses	5-32
Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)	5-36
Filter Network/Server	5-43
Spanning Tree	5-48
Trunk Port	5-51

6 Basic Configuration

Overview	6-2
Start Basic Configuration	6-2
Local Unit Identification	6-4
Routing Protocol/Security	6-5
WAN Interface Connections	6-7
Remote Unit Profile	6-9
SNMP Configuration	6-12
Setup Complete	6-13

7 Verification Window

Ping Utility	7-2
Trace Route	7-6
Port Monitor	7-9

8 Statistics Window

Run-Time	8-2
VoIP Channel View	8-6
Priority Queue	8-10

9 System Reports Window

Events	9-2
Alarms	9-4
Networks/Servers	9-6
Address Tables	9-11

10 *Exit Window*

Logout	10-2
Reinitialize	10-3

11 *Router Configuration*

Basic Setup	11-2
Basic VoIP Setup	11-3
Overview:.....	11-3
Fax and Modem Setup.....	11-6
PPP Internet Connection and	
Public IP Address Routing.....	11-14
Router in Slot 1	11-14
Frame Relay Internet Connection and	
Public IP Address Routing.....	11-15
Router in Slot 1	11-15
Internet Connection using PPP, NAT/PAT and Firewall Filters	11-16
Router in Slot 1	11-16
Internet Connection using NAT and Static NAT Addresses.....	11-18
Router in Slot 1	11-18
Back-to-Back with PPP.....	11-20
Boulder Router in Slot 1	11-20
Denver Router in Slot 1	11-21
Back-to-Back with Multi-Link PPP	11-22
Boulder Router in Slot 1	11-22
Denver Router in Slot 1	11-23
Back-to-Back with Frame Relay.....	11-24
Boulder Router in Slot 1	11-24
Denver Router in Slot 3	11-25

A *User Events*

User Events	A-2
Authenticate Events.....	A-3
Triggered Events	A-4
Alarms.....	A-5

B Protocol Types

Protocol Number in Firewall Filters. B-2

Ethernet Protocol Types. B-7

C Troubleshooting

Communication Related Issues C-2

 Excessive Triggered Update Events on the Events screen C-2

LAN Related Issues C-2

 Unable to add data filters, advertise networks or create static
 route entries. C-2

 Unable to access the Local (LAN) Router unit via Telnet C-4

 Unable to access a remote unit via Telnet. C-4

Diagnostics and Performance Tools. C-5

 Verification C-6

 Statistics C-7

 System Reports C-8

Alarms C-9

 Identify Alarm. C-9

 Clear Alarm. C-11

Glossary

Index

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

In this Chapter

- Overview
- Installation
- Maneuvering in the System
- Fields
- Help Bar
- Connecting to the Router

Overview

This manual covers the Router menu-driven user interface only, all other information for the Router can be found in the *Adit 600 User Manual*.

The Router can be configured using CLI via telnet, through the Router Menu-driven software.

The CMG Router has the following versions:

- CMG Service card
- CMG-01 Service card
- CMG-02 Service card
- CMG/CMG-02 Service card with G.729

Windows displaying the G.729 feature will be clearly noted in this manual.

Installation

The Router card can be installed into any of the service card slots (1-6) of the Adit 600 chassis. This card is hot-swappable, therefore the card can be removed and replaced without bringing down the system or with or without power to the unit.

Install a Router Card

1. Slide the Router card into a service card slot of the chassis.
2. Press firmly into slot to engage, until card is seated completely.
3. Card has completed bootup when a solid Red CRD light (an LED) is displayed.

Install Country Specific Ringer Tones

The CMG Router card ships with a set of call progress tone files that allow call progress tone definitions for a number of other countries to be used. The tones are played to a VoIP endpoint at the direction of an external MGCP call agent. By default the call progress are defined to match the United States standard call progress tones.

Tones are loaded via TFTP directly to the CMG Router card. All supported country tones are provided on the software CD with the CMG Router. For more information see the *Adit 600 User Manual*.

NOTE: Use of ringer tones requires an Adit 600 Controller with release 5.0 or higher and CMG Router release 1.1 or higher.

Syntax: load {cmg_card-addr} tftp {ip-addr} {"tone_file"}

Example: load 2 tftp 172.26.100.25 "us.tdb"

Once a tone file is loaded into a CMG Router card it will remain in effect until replaced by another. It is not removed when the CMG Router card is set back to its default settings.

Maneuvering in the System

[TAB] moves from one field to the next.

Keyboard arrows move to the next field in the direction of the arrow.

[] Items in brackets are scrollable options. With the [Spacebar] the operator can move through the selections.

[ENTER] displays the window for the selected feature or to enter a alphanumeric value.

[ESC] Exit and return to previous window or to the Main Menu.

Help Bar - is displayed along the bottom of the window and lists options for the selected feature.

The CMG Router software contains three different field types that may be used in entering information: scroll, select and edit.

Fields

Scroll Field

A field enclosed in angle brackets is a scrollable option field. While the field is selected use the following keystrokes:

[SPACEBAR] will scroll forward through the options

[ENTER] will open the option's window or accept the entered value.

Example: Terminal: <generic>

Select Field

A field followed by -> is a selectable field, which causes an action to be performed, highlight the field and press [ENTER] to perform the action, for example, to enter the Trunk Port Setup screen.

Example: SETUP <Trunk> ->

Some selectable fields, such as Main Menu options, are also a scrollable option field. For example, <Events>->. Press the [SPACEBAR] to select the desired option and then press [ENTER] to perform the action.

Edit Field

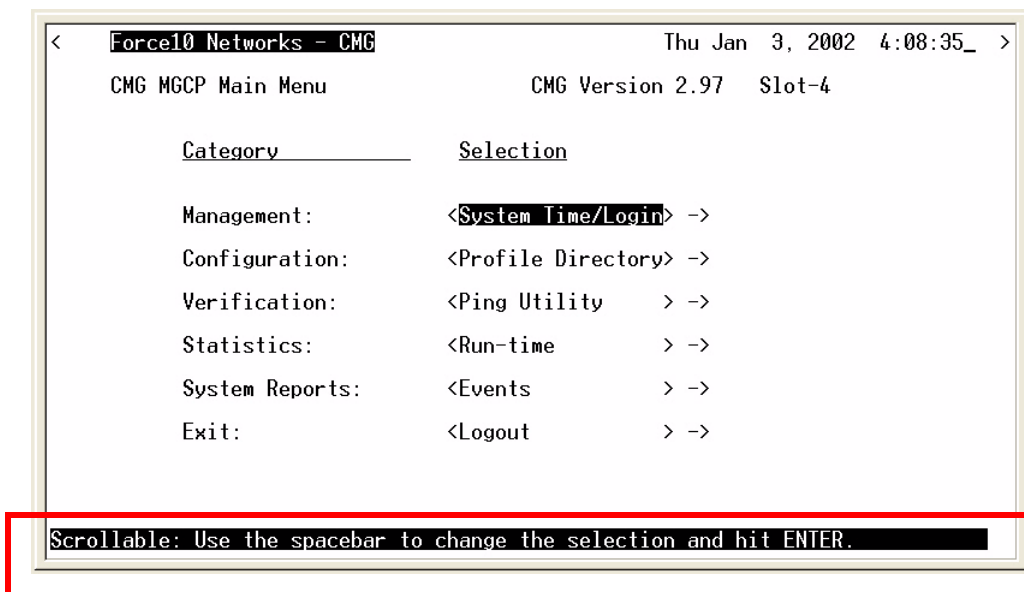
A field value enclosed in parentheses () may be modified by entering an alphanumeric character.

Example: SYSTEM NAME: (Adit)

You will note that many editable fields are displayed with a default value. To change this value, highlight the field and type over the existing entry or press [DELETE] and then enter new value. Note: these fields are case sensitive. To enter this value press [ENTER].

Help Bar

The CMG Router provides field specific help that is displayed at the bottom of the window. The help text will indicate if the field is scrollable or editable and provide a brief description of the field. If it is a selectable field, it will state what to do to invoke the action to be performed.



Connecting to the Router

Establish a Telnet Session

1. Use the **telnet {slot}** CLI command to connect to the Router card. The following example is when the router is located in slot 4.

```
> telnet 4
Connected.
Escape character is '^]'.
Attempting Force10 Networks CMG connection...
CMG [Tue Aug 10, 2004 23:20:36] (<CR> to login)
```

2. Select **[ENTER]** or **<CR>** to log in.

```
Password >
```

3. Enter default password (**admin**) and select **[ENTER]**.

```
Password >*****
Select a terminal type...
(<space> or <back-space> to toggle, <CR> to accept)

Terminal: <VT100>
```

4. Select Terminal Type: scroll through options with the **[SPACEBAR]** and then **[ENTER]** to select. Recommended **generic**.

```
Terminal: <generic>
```

Set a New Password

If you have logged in with a default password, for security reasons the password should be changed, the system directs the user to do so.

```
> telnet 4
Connected.
Escape character is '^]'.
Attempting Force10 Networks CMG connection...
CMG [Tue Jan  1, 2002  0:01:06] (<CR> to login)
Password >*****
Select a terminal type...
(<space> or <back-space> to toggle, <CR> to accept)

Terminal: <generic>
You have logged in with a default password.
For security reasons the password should be changed.
Complete the change request and record your new password
for future use.

Password Change Request

(Valid CMG passwords are from 5 to 15 alpha-numeric
characters)

      NEW Password >*****
RETYPE Password >*****
```

After a successful login, the system prompts the user to change the password from the default.

1. Type in New Password, and press [ENTER]
2. Retype in New Password, and press [ENTER]

Introduction

Connecting to the Router

CHAPTER 2

Management Window

In this Chapter

- Management Overview
- System Time/Login
- Upload/Download
- Load Defaults
- Software Images

Management Overview

The **Management menu** contains the system components of the Router software. This section is used to define security parameters, factory default settings, as well as providing software loading and configuration settings for the Router.

Management Menu options allow the user to:

- Establish the system security features
- Install and backup system software
- Backup and install configuration settings
- Default system parameters to factory settings

NOTE: Two simultaneous sessions are allowed to access the Router software. For example, one local and one remote (one must be accessing with the **VIEW** level).

System Time/Login

1. Select **Management** <**System Time/Login**> from the Main Menu, and select [ENTER].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:08:35_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu          CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

  Category      Selection

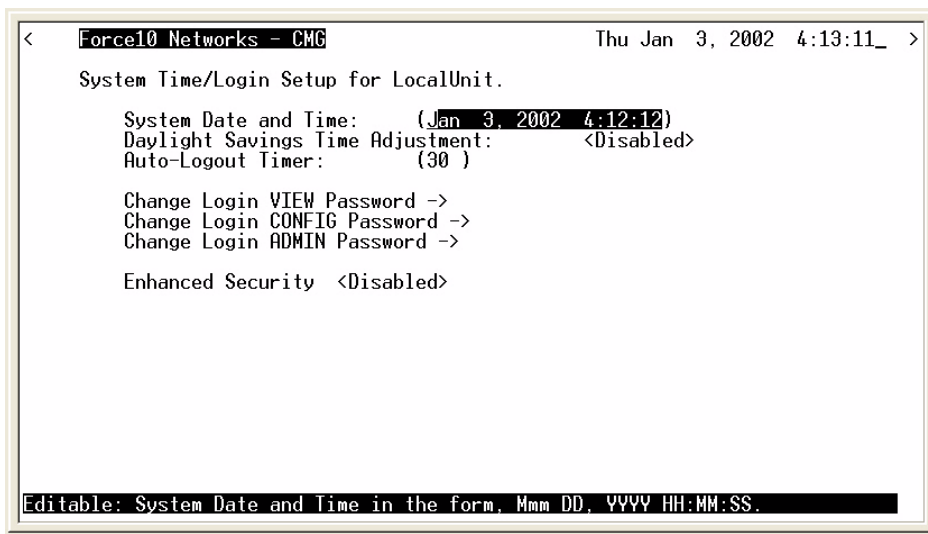
Management:    <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:  <Ping Utility    > ->
Statistics:    <Run-time        > ->
System Reports: <Events                > ->
Exit:          <Logout          > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

Management Window

System Time/Login

This screen provides the basic system and security options for the Router card.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp "Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:13:11_". The main heading is "System Time/Login Setup for LocalUnit." Below this, the following settings are displayed: "System Date and Time: (Jan 3, 2002 4:12:12)", "Daylight Savings Time Adjustment: <Disabled>", and "Auto-Logout Timer: (30)". There are three menu options: "Change Login VIEW Password ->", "Change Login CONFIG Password ->", and "Change Login ADMIN Password ->". At the bottom, it shows "Enhanced Security <Disabled>". A footer bar states: "Editable: System Date and Time in the form, Mmm DD, YYYY HH:MM:SS."

The Router is equipped with three password levels and an enhanced security password.

Level 1 VIEW allows the user to view only, no changes are allowed.

Level 2 CONFIG allows the user to view and change all screens.

Level 3 ADMIN allows the user to view and change all screens, terminate users, as well as change all three passwords.

The **Enhanced Security** option provides an additional level of security for the network administrator.

System Date and Time

The time and date values are used for reporting purposes. Enter the date in the following format: Mmm DD, YYYY. Immediately follow the date with the desired time entry. The appropriate time format is HH:MM:SS (hour:minute:second). Press [TAB] to proceed to the next field.

Daylight Savings Time Adjustment

Use this field to enable or disable automatic adjustment of the system clock for Daylight Savings Time.

Auto-Logout Timer

This field defines the minutes of inactivity before the current session is terminated. The default time is 30 minutes. Type the desired auto-logout time (between 1-255).

NOTE: Any changes that have not been saved will be lost when the timer is activated.

View Password

Users assigned to this level may view only, no changes are allowed. The default **VIEW** password is "**public**". This field must be unique from the **CONFIG** and **ADMIN** passwords. The field may be a 5-15 characters alphanumeric value.

Config Password

Users assigned to this level may view and change all screens. The default **CONFIG** password is "**config**". This entry must be unique from the **VIEW** and **ADMIN** passwords. The field may be a 5-15 character alphanumeric value.

Admin Password

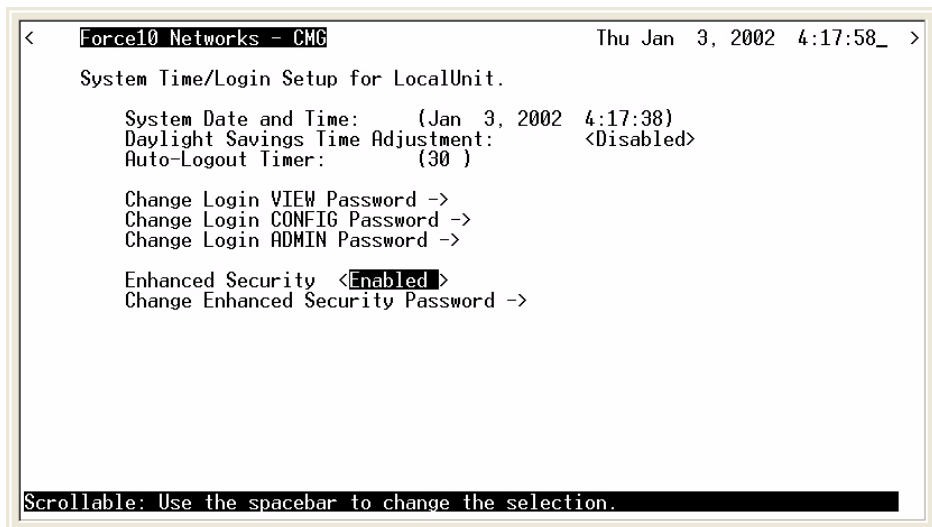
Users assigned to this level may view and change all screens, as well as change all three password levels. The default **ADMIN** password is "**admin**". This entry must be unique from the **VIEW** and **CONFIG** passwords. The field value may be a 5-15 character alphanumeric value.

NOTE: If the default login passwords are not changed, the user will be prompted, at each login, to enter new passwords at the **CONFIG** and **ADMIN** levels.

Enhanced Security

The **Enhanced Security** option provides another level of password security that restricts access to the Main Menu via Telnet or the Async port. It can be used by a Network Administrator to only allow those with the **Enhanced Security** password to access the Router. When enabled, this option hides the system login prompt until the appropriate password is entered.

1. Use the [SPACEBAR] to select **<Enabled>** and [TAB] to enter this selection.



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:17:58_ >
System Time/Login Setup for LocalUnit.

System Date and Time: (Jan 3, 2002 4:17:38)
Daylight Savings Time Adjustment: <Disabled>
Auto-Logout Timer: (30 )

Change Login VIEW Password ->
Change Login CONFIG Password ->
Change Login ADMIN Password ->

Enhanced Security <Enabled>
Change Enhanced Security Password ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

2. The **Change Enhanced Security Password - >** field will display. Select [ENTER] to change password. You will be requested to enter the password twice to confirm.

```
+-----+
| NEW Password: █ |
+-----+
```

When Telneting into the Router the following will appear:

```
> telnet 4
Connected.
      Escape character is '^]'.
```

1. Type the Enhanced Security Password here. **Note:** There will be no effect to the screen here until the correct password is typed in. When the correct password is typed, no return or other keystroke is needed, the following will appear:

```
Password >
```

WARNING! IF ENHANCED SECURITY IS ENABLED, AND THE ADMINISTRATOR DOES NOT NOTE THE PASSWORD THERE IS NO WAY TO ACCESS THE ROUTER UNTIL YOU HAVE RESET THE ROUTER BACK TO ITS DEFAULT SETTINGS, LOSING ALL CONFIGURATION SETTINGS. SEE SET [ROUTER_CARD-ADDR} DEFAULT.

2. At this point the Router is requesting your Level 1, 2 or 3 User Password. Enter your password and select [ENTER] and continue as you would Telnet into the Router as normal.

```
Password >*****
Select a terminal type...
(<space> or <back-space> to toggle, <CR> to accept)

Terminal: <generic>
```

Upload/Download

WARNING! BEFORE LOADING A DOWN-LEVEL OF ROUTER CODE TO AN ADIT 600, SAVE THE CONFIGURATION TO A FILE. CONFIGURATION MAY BE RESET TO THE DEFAULT SETTING AND CURRENT CONFIGURATION LOST.

This window allows the network administrator to manage the list of devices and users who are authorized to perform:

- Installation of software
- Backup of software and configuration settings (via tftp)

The Router has enhanced management capabilities enabling a network administrator to perform a **Code Upload** of new software to the router from a central location via the LAN or WAN connection using TFTP. A **Code Download** can also be performed to save a backup copy (binary image) of the software to a file on a PC. **Config Upload** and **Config Download** can also be performed remotely via TFTP to install and backup the Router's settings to and from a binary file.

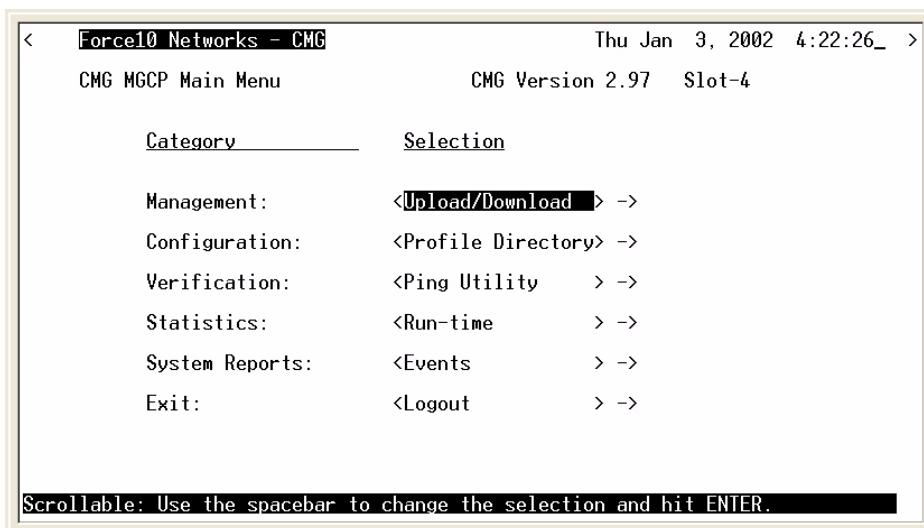
There is an additional option to upload code to the Router, with the CLI command `load {slot-number} tftp {ip-addr}{"file-name"}`

Example: `load 4 tftp 172.26.100.25 "rtrall1_10.mgm"`

The example loads the software upgrade file "rtrall1_10.mgm" from a PC to a Router card in slot 4 via TFTP.

To Set Up the Router for Uploads/Downloads

1. Select **Management: <Upload/Download>** from the Main Menu, and [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan  3, 2002  4:22:26_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu          CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

  Category      Selection

Management:    <Upload/Download> ->
Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:  <Ping Utility   > ->
Statistics:    <Run-time      > ->
System Reports: <Events              > ->
Exit:          <Logout        > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

WARNING! THE CMG ROUTER WILL RETURN TO DEFAULT VALUES IF THE CODE IS DOWNGRADED TO A RELEASE PREVIOUS TO 2.10.

Management Window

Upload/Download

2. Select [CTRL A] to add a TFTP Upload/Download User.

Note: The **IP Address 1. (*)** will display. The * denotes **any** IP Address on the defined **Client Site**. The user may define a specific IP Address for Uploads/Downloads by replacing the * or by Adding another Upload/Download User.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:26:11_ >
Feature and Release Key Options
<Current Features> No Features Activated
<Set> ( )

CMG has 1 TFTP Upload/Download User
Reboot after load code? <YES> Reboot after load config? <YES>
  IP Address      Client Site      Mode
1. (10.10.2.54   ) <Local LAN > <both >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase
Hit + or - : to view lists longer than display region
```

3. Select the **Client Site**

Selections are: <**Local LAN**> (default) or **Remote Unit(s)** that have been set up.

4. For **Mode**, specify whether the IP Address can perform **code** uploads/downloads, **config** file uploads/downloads, or **both**.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:27:31_ >
Feature and Release Key Options
<Current Features> No Features Activated
<Set> ( )

CMG has 2 TFTP Upload/Download User
Reboot after load code? <YES> Reboot after load config? <YES>
  IP Address      Client Site      Mode
1. (10.10.2.54   ) <Local LAN > <both >
2. (192.168.1.1 ) <RemoteUnit> <code >

CTRL A to add. CTRL E to erase
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

5. Press [ESC] to save your changes and return to the **Main Menu**. These changes will go into effect immediately.

Upload/Download Setup Menu Fields

Feature and Release Key Options

Options may be available to purchase, to upgrade the Router. Once this option is purchased, a key code will be given to enable the feature on this product. For more information please call Force10 Networks' Technical Assistance Center.

Reboot After Load Code

Use this option to automatically reboot the Router after software is successfully installed. A software load verification checks and verifies that the new software is good before the unit will accept it. If it is determined to be bad or damaged, the Router will reject it and continue to use the original software.

Reboot After Load Config

Use this option to automatically reboot the Router after a configuration file is successfully installed.

IP Address

The **IP Address** field is use to identify which device(s) will be allowed to perform config and/or code uploads and downloads. A "*" in this field will allow all devices at the selected **Client Site** to perform Uploads/Downloads.

Client Site

This field identifies the profile the Router will use to reach the **IP Address** entered in the previous field. If <Local LAN> is selected, it indicates the device can be reached via the LAN. If the device can be reached via a WAN connection, you should select one of the Remote (WAN) profiles.

Mode

Use this field option to enable uploads/downloads of software and configuration files for specific IP addresses.

Code – Authorizes the IP Address to perform software uploads and downloads. When new software is installed on the Router, a software load verification checks and verifies that the new software is good before the unit will accept it. If it is determined to be bad or damaged, the Router will reject it and continue to use the original software. Acceptable binary file extensions are .mgm or .MGM.

Config – Authorizes the IP Address to perform configuration file uploads and downloads. For uploads, this selection allows the device(s) in the IP Address field to transfer or restore a previously backed-up configuration file to the Router via TFTP. For downloads, this selection defines an IP Address to which a backup copy of the Router's configuration can be sent. Acceptable file extensions are “.cfg” or “.CFG”.

Both – Authorizes the IP Address to perform code and config file uploads/downloads.

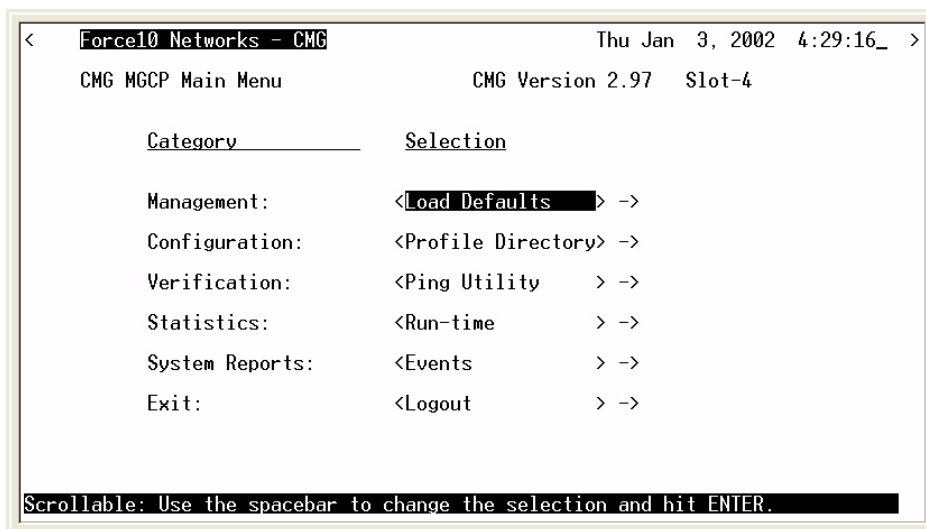
NOTE: Code and Config uploads require a reboot of the unit before the changes take effect.

Load Defaults

Use the Load Defaults option to reset the router software to the factory defaults. This option will delete **all** configuration settings, including the passwords.

Use the [SPACEBAR] to choose <Yes> and press [ENTER]. If you have a telnet connection to the unit, your session will be terminated.

1. Select **Management <Load Defaults>** from the Main Menu, and select [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:29:16_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

Category Selection

Management: <Load Defaults> ->
Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
Verification: <Ping Utility> > ->
Statistics: <Run-time> > ->
System Reports: <Events> > ->
Exit: <Logout> > ->

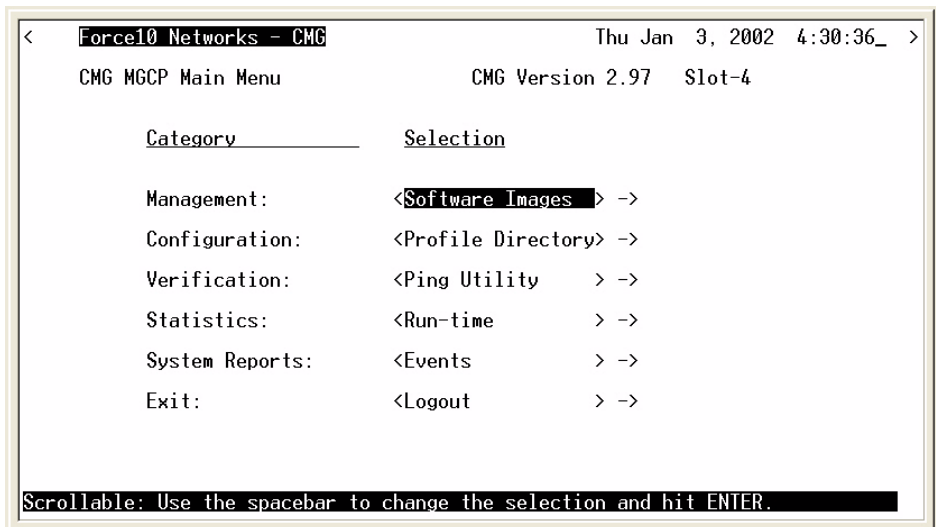
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

2. A dialog box will display confirming that you want to load factory defaults.
3. Select <YES> with the [SPACEBAR] and select [ENTER].
4. Defaults will be loaded.

Software Images

Use the Software Images option to switch the active with the backup application images stored in the Router.

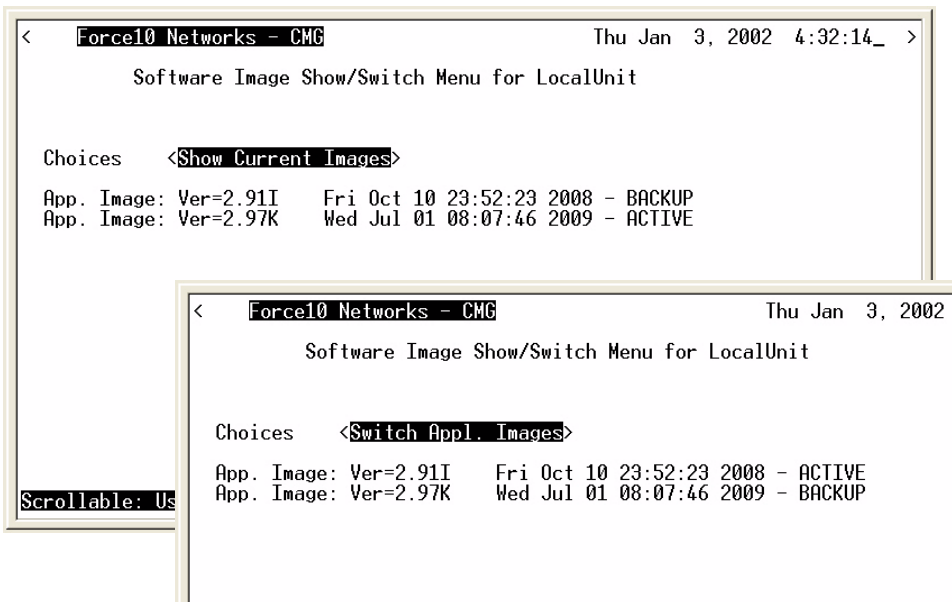
1. Select **Management <Software Images>** from the Main Menu, and select **[ENTER]**.



Options

Show Current Images - will display the application images stored in the Router (shown below).

Switch Appl. Images - Switch the active with the backup application images stored in the router. Note: More than one software image must be loaded (7.0 or later) for an **active** and a **backup** image to display.



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:32:14_ >
Software Image Show/Switch Menu for LocalUnit

Choices <Show Current Images>
App. Image: Ver=2.91I Fri Oct 10 23:52:23 2008 - BACKUP
App. Image: Ver=2.97K Wed Jul 01 08:07:46 2009 - ACTIVE

Scrollable: Us
```

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002
Software Image Show/Switch Menu for LocalUnit

Choices <Switch Appl. Images>
App. Image: Ver=2.91I Fri Oct 10 23:52:23 2008 - ACTIVE
App. Image: Ver=2.97K Wed Jul 01 08:07:46 2009 - BACKUP
```

CHAPTER 3

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

In this Chapter

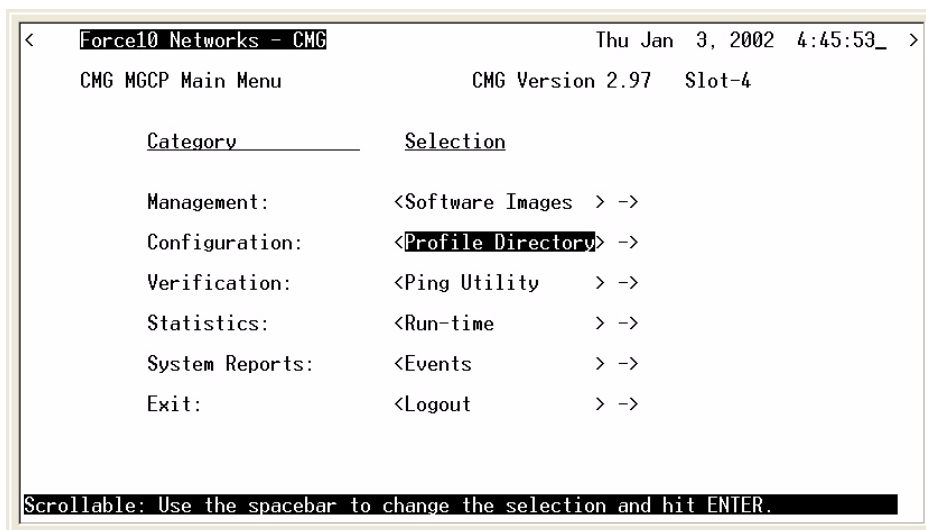
- Overview
- Configuration
- RIP Mode Receive
- RIP Mode Send
- Trunk
- Security
- SNMP
- DNS Proxy
- Spanning Tree Protocol
- Network Time Protocol
- SysLog
- DNS Resolver
- Quality of Service
- MGCP
- VoIP
- Voice Channels
- Dial Plan
- AIS Feature

Overview

The Router Card Profile of the Profile Directory is used to review/configure base router features.

Configuration

1. Select **Configuration: <Profile Directory>** from the Main Menu, and select [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:45:53_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu          CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

  Category      Selection
  Management:   <Software Images > ->
  Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
  Verification: <Ping Utility > ->
  Statistics:    <Run-time > ->
  System Reports: <Events > ->
  Exit:         <Logout > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

Main Menu

2. Select **Router CARD** <Setup -> and select [ENTER].

**Profile
Directory
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:50:13_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type Recv/Send Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE <Setup ->      <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

The Router Card Configuration Window appears.

**Router
Card
Configuration
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:52:03_ >
CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration

RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1 >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1 >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security               Configure ->
SNMP                   Configure ->
DNS Proxy              Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
SysLog                 Configure ->
DNS Resolver           Configure ->
Quality of Service     Configure ->
MGCP                   Configure ->
VOIP                   Configure ->
Voice Channels         Configure ->
Dial Plan              Configure ->
AIS Feature            Configure ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

RIP Mode Receive

Selection is: <RIP1>, <RIP2>, or <RIP1/RIP2>.

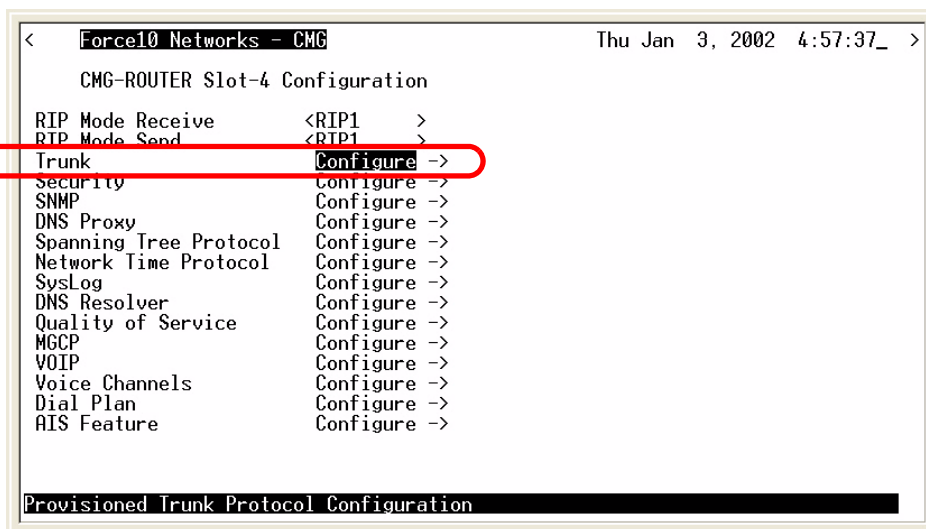
RIP Mode Send

Selection is: <RIP1>, <RIP2>, or <RIP1/RIP2>.

Trunk

This window is used to configure the Trunk setup for the Router. Although the Router is designed to connect remote sites over dedicated connections, the unit supports a number of different encapsulation protocols simultaneously, including Frame Relay and PPP. The Router provides the flexibility to allow the user to define which slots will be used for the selected WAN protocol.

1. Select **Trunk** < **Configure** -> and select [ENTER].



2. All WAN connections will display in this window. To select the WAN Connection Type, [TAB] to the Type on the specific WAN Link #, use the [SPACEBAR] to select the Type (PPP, MLPPP, PPP in Frame Relay, or Frame Relay 1490) and select [ENTER]. For more information on this window, see the following field definitions.

< Force10 Networks - CMG				Wed Feb 6, 2002 1:54:19_ >		
Trunk Setup for local LocalUnit : 8 of 24 Trunks Provisioned						
WAN Link #	WAN Connection	WAN Connection Type	Multilink Group	Data Speed	Voice Limit	BW %
1	A:1:9-9	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
2	A:1:10-10	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
3	A:1:11-11	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
4	A:1:12-12	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
5	A:1:13-13	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
6	A:1:14-14	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
7	A:1:15-15	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
8	A:1:16-16	<PPP>	> <None>	<64K>	(100)	
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.						

Trunk Setup Menu Fields

WAN Link

This field displays the WAN Link Number (1-24) for the WAN Connection.

WAN Connection

The WAN Connection displays the current connection of this WAN, in the form {slot:port:channel}.

WAN Connection Type

Determines the type of protocol encapsulation that will be used for the selected WAN.

PPP

Point-to-Point Protocol. Provides a standard means of encapsulating data packets sent over a single-channel WAN link. PPP is the standard WAN encapsulation protocol for the interoperability of bridges and routers.

MLPPP

MultiLink PPP. When PPP is selected and a Multilink group is chosen the WAN Connection Type will display MLPPP.

PPP in Frame Relay

Point-to-Point Protocol encapsulated in Frame Relay.

Frame Relay 1490

A packet-switching protocol for connecting devices on a WAN. Frame Relay networks in the U.S. support data transfer rates at T1 (1.544 Mbps) and T3 (45 Mbps) speeds. Frame Relay service is provided for customers who want connections at 56 Kbps to T1 speeds.

Multilink Group

The Multilink Group will specify a trunk as part of a multilink PPP group. Selection is: **<None>** or **<1>** through **<24>**. Available only when MLPPP connection type is selected.

Data Speed

The Data Speed will specify the data speed for each DS0 in the given trunk. Selection is: **<56K>** or **<64K>**. Default is 64K.

Voice BW Limit %

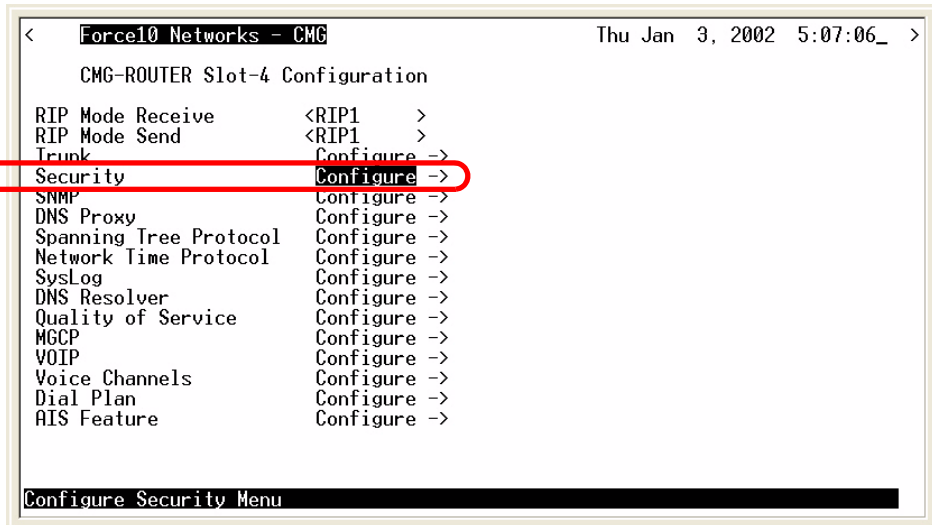
Defines the maximum percentage of bandwidth allowed on this trunk for voice calls. The remaining percentage to be reserved for routed or bridged data. Routed or bridged data is allowed to use any available bandwidth, but it is a lower priority than voice. Range is 0 - 100.

PVC Management

Field	Description
Disabled	Disables the PVC (Permanent Virtual Circuit) management.
Annex D	Frame Relay standard Poll Interval - Range is between 5-30 Poll Counter - Range is between 1-255
LMI	Local Management Interface Poll Interval - Range is between 5-30 Poll Counter - Range is between 1-255

Security

1. Select **Security < Configure ->** and select [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 5:07:06_ >
CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration
RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1    >
RIP Mode Send        <RIP1    >
Trunk                 Configure ->
Security              Configure ->
SNMP                  Configure ->
DNS Proxy              Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
SysLog                 Configure ->
DNS Resolver           Configure ->
Quality of Service     Configure ->
MGCP                   Configure ->
VOIP                   Configure ->
Voice Channels          Configure ->
Dial Plan              Configure ->
AIS Feature            Configure ->

Configure Security Menu
```

The fields on this screen may be used to define the authentication process for the local unit.

**Security
Setup
Window**

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Fri Jan 4, 2002 2:45:43

>

Security Setup for local LocalUnit

Authentication by remote: Protocol: <NONE>
User ID: <Local Profile Name > LocalUnit

Authentication of remote: Protocol: <NONE>

Local Security Server: Type_____Address_____Password_____

<None>

Scrollable: Select method remote units use to authenticate this system.

Security Setup Menu Fields

Authentication by Remote

Protocol: CHAP, PAP or NONE

Use this first field to identify the authentication protocol to be used by remote units when authenticating this unit.

<CHAP> Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol

<CHAP> Secret

Select [ENTER] and a **NEW Password** dialog box will display. Enter a 1 - 15 character password and select [ENTER] and a **RETYPE Password** dialog box will display. Retype password and select [ENTER]. Password is now set.

NEW Password:

RETYPE Password:

<PAP> Password Authentication Protocol

<PAP> Password

Same as above <CHAP> Password.

<NONE > (no authentication protocol) is the default.

User ID

Use this field to define the local unit's User ID. During the authentication process, the local unit will send a name or User ID, along with the authentication protocol's secret or password (see above). Use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll between <Local Profile Name> (the default value) and <Local Custom Name>. If set at <Local Profile Name>, the local unit will send the 11 character unit name which was defined on the Local (LAN) Profile screen. If this field is set to <Local Custom Name> you may define a 32 character maximum alphanumeric value to represent the User ID which is sent during the authentication process. Defining a custom User ID simply gives the end user more flexibility for this value.

To assign a custom User ID, set the **USER ID** field to <Local Custom Name> and press [TAB]. Up to ten (10) custom names may be configured.

Authentication of Remote

Protocol: CHAP, PAP or NONE

Use this field to identify the authentication protocol to be used by this unit when authenticating remote devices.

Local Security Server

Use these fields to identify the local server that is used to authenticate remote devices. This field is only necessary if you are using either the <**RADIUS**> or <**TACACS+**> security authentication method. If you are not using either of these security methods, the unit will respond to the authentication requests of remote devices and will accept or reject them based on their validity.

Type

Use the [**SPACEBAR**] to choose the security authentication method that you are using.

<**None**> Use this setting if the local unit will be used to authenticate remote devices. Please note that you may not use the <**None**> setting if the **Security Server** field for a remote device has been set to <**External Server**>

<**RADIUS**> Will set the server to use the RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In Service) protocol. RADIUS is a client/server-based authentication software system.

<**TACACS+**> Will set the server to use the TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System) protocol. TACACS+ provides services of authentication, authorization and accounting independently.

Address

Enter the IP Address of the local server that will be used during the authentication process. If <**None**> was selected in the <**Type**> field, this field will be disabled.

Password

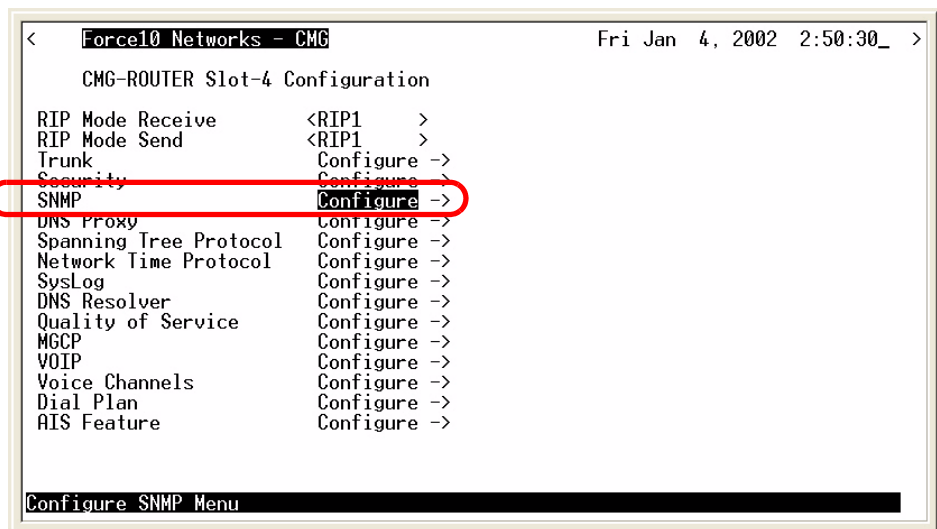
Enter the password of the local server that will be used during the authentication process. You must make sure that the password entered into the server is the same as the value entered here or the authentication process will fail. If <**None**> was selected in the <**Type**> field, this field will be disabled.

SNMP

By defining specific IP Addresses, devices may be specified to manage the Local Unit via SNMP.

NOTE: The Router is compatible with the Standard MIB and MIB II.

1. Select **SNMP < Configure ->** and select [ENTER].



2. Use the SNMP setup window to setup SNMP configurations.

**SNMP
Setup
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 4, 2002 2:52:41_ >

SYS Name:
(unknown)

SYS Contact:
(unknown)

SYS Location:
(unknown)

SNMP Community Name(s):  Name      Address      Access
                        {public}   {0.0.0.0}   <read >

SNMP Trap Destinations ->

Editable: Please enter a value.
```

SNMP Setup Menu Fields

SYS Name

Set the value of sysName. Value has a maximum of 64 ASCII characters.

SYS Contact

Set the value of sysContact. Value has a maximum of 64 ASCII characters.

SYS Location

Set the value of sysLocation. Value has a maximum of 64 ASCII characters.

SNMP Community Name(s)

Use these fields to specify the community name, address and access privileges of devices needing to communicate with the Local Unit (LAN) through SNMP. If no IP Addresses is defined on this screen, any device may access the local unit using the IP Address assigned on the Local (LAN) Profile Setup screen, regardless of the specified community name. The values entered in these fields will be used by the SNMP program as verification of entry into the Router.

Name

Enter the community name(s) of the device to access the Local (LAN) unit through SNMP. Community names entered into the SNMP program **MUST** match the values entered here or access for remote management will not be allowed. The default community name is **public**, new community names can have a maximum of 10 characters.

Address

Enter the corresponding IP Address of the device(s) that were entered in the **Name** field.

Access

<**Read**> device is allowed to view the settings, but cannot make any changes

<**Write**> device is allowed to make changes but not view settings

<**Both**> device is allowed to both read and write privileges

SNMP Trap Destinations

Select **SNMP Trap Destination** - > and select **[ENTER]**.

**SNMP
Setup
Window**



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  2:54:18_ >

SYS Name:
(unknown                                           )

SYS Contact:
(unknown                                           )

SYS Location:
(unknown                                           )

SNMP Community Name(s):  Name      Address      Access
                        {public}   {0.0.0.0}   <read >

SNMP Trap Destinations ->

Configure SNMP Traps
```

This window defines the SNMP Trap Destinations to which the Router will report alarm information.

**SNMP
Setup
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  2:56:24_ >

SNMP Trap Destination(s): Name      Address      Location
                        {public}   {0.0.0.0}   <Local LAN >
```

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

SNMP

Name

Enter the community name(s) of the devices to which the Router will report. The default community name is **public**. To enter a new community name, highlight the field and type the desired value, with a maximum of 10 characters.

Address

Enter the corresponding IP Address of the device that was entered in the **Name** field.

Location

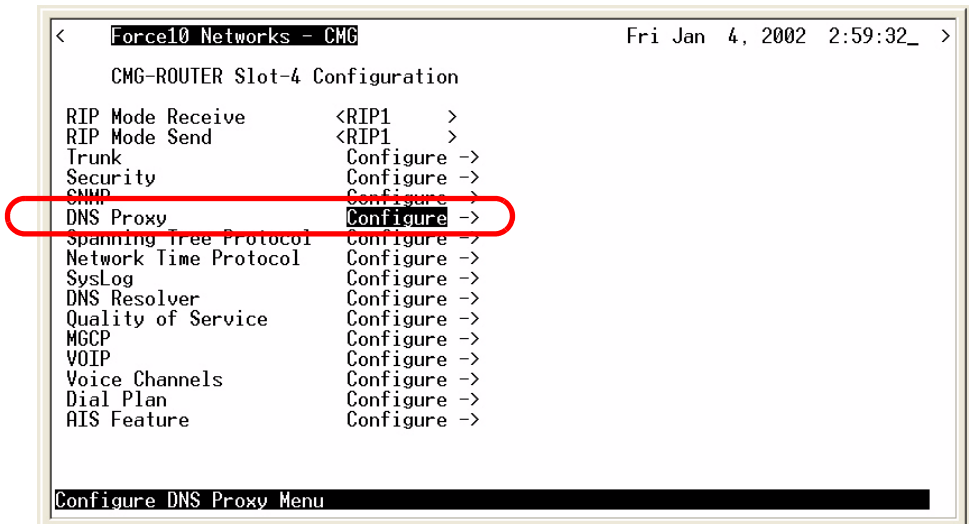
<**Local LAN**>, <**RemoteUnit**>

Available options are the <**Local LAN**> and all Remote Units (WAN), defined in the Profile Directory (there can be up to 30).

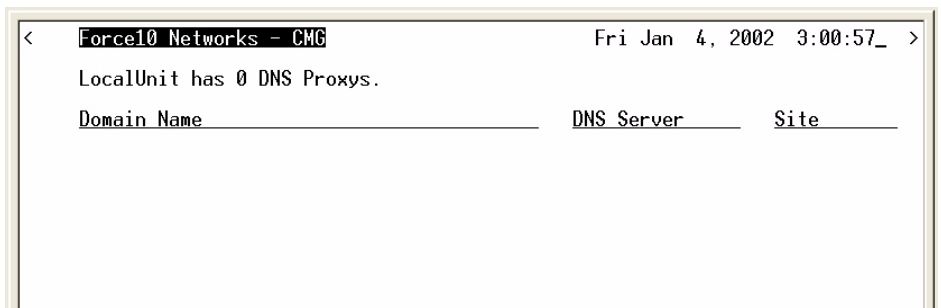
DNS Proxy

The DNS (Domain Name Servers) Proxy specifies the IP address of DNS name servers to be used by the DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) clients.

1. Select **DNS Proxy < Configure ->** and select [ENTER].



2. Type [CTRL A] to Add a DNS Proxy.



Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

DNS Proxy

3. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.

4. Select [ESC] and <YES> to exit the window and save changes.

DNS Proxy Setup Menu Fields

Domain Name

Define a name for the Domain with up to 41 characters.

DNS Server

Enter the IP Address for the DNS Server.

Site

This field lists the Local LAN and all the RemoteUnit that have a profile created for them. Use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll through the list.

Spanning Tree Protocol

The Spanning Tree Protocol configures the global setup for using the Spanning Tree Algorithm as specified in the IEEE 802.1D specification.

1. Select **Spanning Tree Protocol < Configure ->** and select **[ENTER]**.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  3:03:46_ >
      CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration
RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1      >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1      >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security               Configure ->
SNMP                  Configure ->
DNS Proxy              Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol  Configure ->
SysLog                 Configure ->
DNS Resolver           Configure ->
Quality of Service     Configure ->
MGCP                   Configure ->
VOIP                   Configure ->
Voice Channels         Configure ->
Dial Plan              Configure ->
AIS Feature            Configure ->

Configure Spanning Tree Protocol
```

2. To enable Spanning Tree, scroll **<Disabled>** to **<Enabled>**, with the **[SPACEBAR]**, select **[ENTER]**.

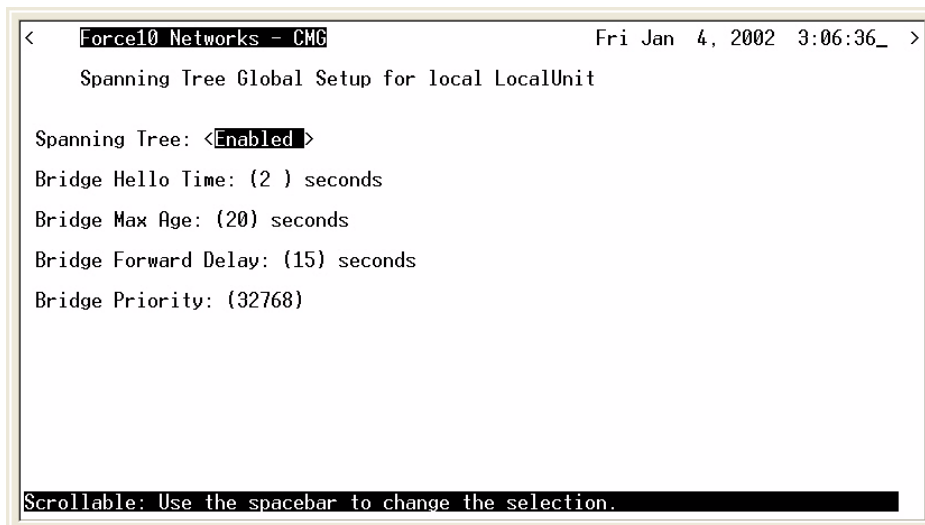
```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  3:05:08_ >
      Spanning Tree Global Setup for local LocalUnit

Spanning Tree: <Disabled>
```

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

Spanning Tree Protocol

3. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 3:06:36_ >
Spanning Tree Global Setup for local LocalUnit

Spanning Tree: <Enabled>
Bridge Hello Time: (2 ) seconds
Bridge Max Age: (20) seconds
Bridge Forward Delay: (15) seconds
Bridge Priority: (32768)

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

SPANNING TREE GLOBAL SETUP MENU FIELDS

Bridge Hello Time

The Bridge Hello Time specifies the time interval between transmissions of Topology Change Notification BPDUs towards the Root when the Bridge is attempting to notify the Designated Bridge on the LAN to which its Root Port is attached of a topology change. The value can range from 1 to 10 seconds, with a default of 2 seconds.

Bridge Max Age

The Bridge Max Age value specifies the maximum age of received protocol information before it is discarded. The value can range from 6 to 40 seconds, with a default of 20 seconds.

Bridge Forward Delay

The Bridge Forward Delay is the time spent by a Port in the Listening or Learning States before transitioning to the Learning or Forwarding State, respectively. The value can range from 4 to 30 seconds, with a default of 15 seconds.

Bridge Priority

The Bridge Priority is the priority part of the bridge identifier. The value can range from 0 to 65535, with a default of 32768.

Network Time Protocol

The Network Time Protocol is a protocol which sets the network to a common time system for Internet hosts, based off of GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).

1. Select **Network Time Protocol < Configure ->** and select **[ENTER]**.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  3:08:02_ >
CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration
RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1      >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1      >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security              Configure ->
SNMP                  Configure ->
DNS Proxy             Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
Syslog                Configure ->
DNS Resolver          Configure ->
Quality of Service    Configure ->
MGCP                  Configure ->
VOIP                  Configure ->
Voice Channels        Configure ->
Dial Plan             Configure ->
AIS Feature           Configure ->

Configure Network Time Protocol
```

2. To enable Network Time Protocol, scroll **<Disabled>** to **<Enabled>**, with the **[SPACEBAR]**, select **[ENTER]**.

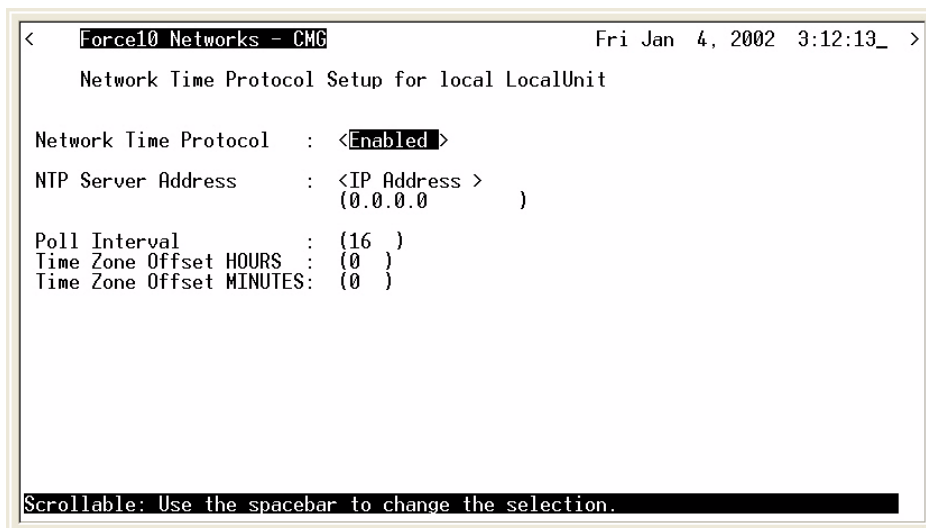
```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  3:09:33_ >
Network Time Protocol Setup for local LocalUnit

Network Time Protocol  : <Disabled>
```

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

Network Time Protocol

3. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 3:12:13_ >
Network Time Protocol Setup for local LocalUnit

Network Time Protocol : <Enabled>
NTP Server Address    : <IP Address >
                      (0.0.0.0      )
Poll Interval        : (16 )
Time Zone Offset HOURS : (0 )
Time Zone Offset MINUTES: (0 )

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

Network Time Protocol Setup Menu Fields

Network Time Protocol

<Disabled> to disable Network Processing.

<Enabled> to enable Network Processing. The following items appear once enabled.

NTP Server Address

Set the IP address or domain name of the NTP server.

<IP Address> IP address of the NTP server. Setting the NTP server value to 0.0.0.0 will cause the router to listen to and process NTP broadcasts.

<Domain Name> Domain name of the NTP server. Maximum of 43 characters.

Poll Interval

The Poll Interval specifies the polling of the NTP server to a defined number of seconds. The range (in seconds) is from 16 to 1024 seconds, with a default of 16.

Time Zone Offset HOURS

The hours Time Zone Offset is used to calculate gateway time from GMT (Greenwich Mean Time). Range is -12 to 12.

Time Zone Offset MINUTES

The minutes Time Zone Offset is used to calculate gateway time from GMT (Greenwich Mean Time). Range is 0 to 60.

SysLog

The Syslog client capability enables or disables sending alarm and event messages to an external Syslog server from the Router.

1. Select **SysLog** **Configure** -> and select [ENTER]

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  3:17:39_ >
CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration
RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1    >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1    >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security              Configure ->
SNMP                  Configure ->
DNS Proxy             Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
SysLog                Configure ->
DNS Resolver          Configure ->
Quality of Service    Configure ->
MGCP                  Configure ->
VOIP                  Configure ->
Voice Channels        Configure ->
Dial Plan             Configure ->
AIS Feature           Configure ->

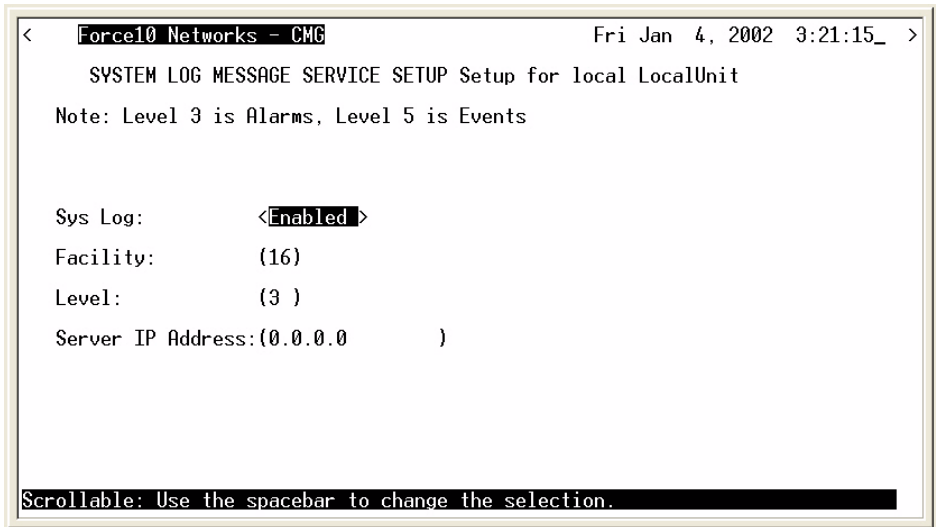
Configure SysLog
```

2. To enable **SysLog** (System Log Message Service), scroll <Disabled> to <Enable>, with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  3:20:02_ >
SYSTEM LOG MESSAGE SERVICE SETUP Setup for local LocalUnit
Note: Level 3 is Alarms, Level 5 is Events

Sys Log:                <Disabled>
```

3. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp of "Fri Jan 4, 2002 3:21:15_". The main text reads "SYSTEM LOG MESSAGE SERVICE SETUP Setup for local LocalUnit". A note states "Note: Level 3 is Alarms, Level 5 is Events". The configuration fields are as follows: "Sys Log:" is set to "<Enabled>", "Facility:" is set to "(16)", "Level:" is set to "(3)", and "Server IP Address:" is set to "(0.0.0.0)". At the bottom, a scrollable bar contains the text "Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection."

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 4, 2002 3:21:15_ >
  SYSTEM LOG MESSAGE SERVICE SETUP Setup for local LocalUnit
  Note: Level 3 is Alarms, Level 5 is Events

  Sys Log:          <Enabled>
  Facility:         (16)
  Level:            (3 )
  Server IP Address:(0.0.0.0      )

  Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

SysLog Setup Menu Fields

Sys Log

To enable the Sys Log, use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll <Disabled> to <Enabled> and select [TAB] or [ENTER]. The window will now display the optional settings for SysLog.

Facility

The value can range from 0 to 23, with a default of 16.

Level

The value can range from 0 to 7, with a default of 3. Level 3 is Alarms and level 5 is Events.

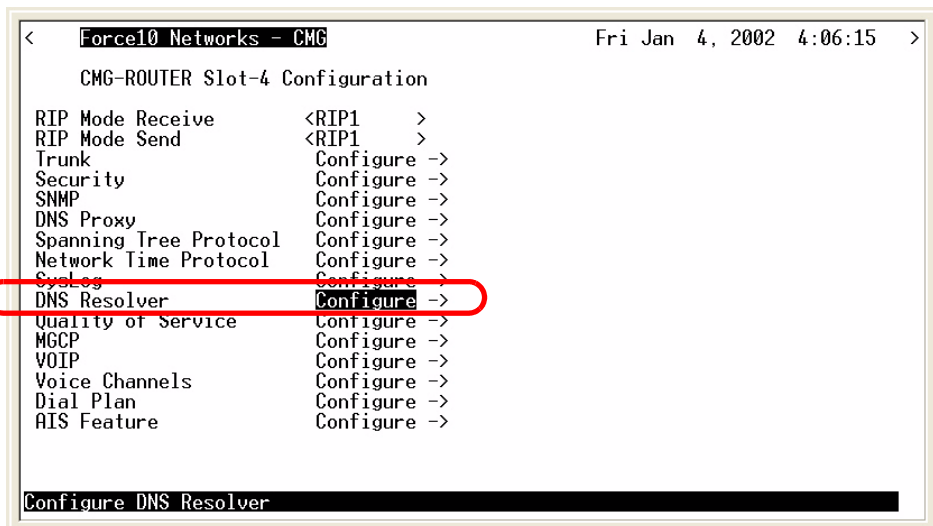
Server IP Address

The server IP Address is a unique, dotted decimal notation entry that is used for data routing purposes. This IP address of the SysLog Server or the Host that has the SysLog Server software running.

DNS Resolver

The DNS Resolver enables the use of the Domain Name Service (DNS) resolver to convert domain names to IP addresses.

1. Select **DNS Resolver Configure ->** and select [ENTER].



2. To enable **DNS Resolver**, scroll **<Disabled>** to **<Enable>**, with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 4:08:14_ >
DNS Resolver Setup for local LocalUnit

DNS Resolver           : <Disabled>
My Domain Name         : (
My Node name           : (
DNS Primary Server IP Address : (0.0.0.0)
DNS Secondary Server IP Address: (0.0.0.0)
DNS Resolver Cache Contents : < Flush >
Static Host List        : View or Modify ->
_____
```

3. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 4:09:32_ >
DNS Resolver Setup for local LocalUnit

DNS Resolver           : <Enabled >
My Domain Name         : ( _____ )
My Node name           : (
DNS Primary Server IP Address : (0.0.0.0)
DNS Secondary Server IP Address: (0.0.0.0)
DNS Resolver Cache Contents : < Flush >
Static Host List        : View or Modify ->
_____
```

DNS RESOLVER SETUP MENU FIELDS

DNS Resolver

Disable/enable use of DNS resolver to convert domain names to IP addresses.

My Domain Name

<Enable> **<Disable>**

Set the default domain that the DNS resolver will add to any name queries that are not fully qualified. Identifier of up to 43 characters.

My Node Name

Set the CMG card's host name. Identifier of up to 15 characters.

DNS Primary Server IP Address

Configure IP address of DNS server #1.

DNS Secondary Server IP Address

Configure IP address of DNS server #2.

DNS Resolver Cache Contents

<Flush> - will clear the cache contents

<Display> - will display the cache contents

Static Host List: View or Modify - >

Select this field and press **[ENTER]**. The system will confirm that you want to save this configuration. Scroll the <No> to <Yes> to save.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  4:13:40_ >
DNS Resolver Setup for local LocalUnit

DNS Resolver           : <Enabled >
My Domain Name         : (TestDomainName                )
My Node name           : (TestNodeName   )
DNS Primary  Server IP Address : (192.168.1.2   )
DNS Secondary Server IP Address: (192.168.2.2   )
+-----+-----+
D| Do you wish to save these configuration changes?      <YES> |
| Note: Changes will not go into effect until the card is reinitialized. |
S+-----+-----+
Scrollable: Select Yes to save these configuration changes.
```

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

DNS Resolver

After the configuration is saved, the DNS Static Host window displays and a Static Host can be added or modified

#	IP Address	Host Name
1.	(0.0.0.0)	()

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase
Editable: Enter a non-zero IP Address/Subnet Mask in Dotted Decimal Notation.

#

Number of Static Hosts set up. A maximum of 33 can be entered.

IP Address

IP address of the static host.

Host Name

Enter the filter name, with a maximum of 42 characters, no spaces or numbers.

Quality of Service

Quality of Service configures the parameters that will be used to recognize routed voice packets which will be handled with higher priority over other routed data.

For each IP datagram to be routed, the TOS byte from the IP header will be logically AND'd with the configured TOS mask and compared to the TOS match value. If they match, the datagram will be handled with a greater priority than other routed data but with lower priority than its own VoIP data.

1. Select **Quality of Service Configure ->** and select [ENTER].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  4:42:54_ >
CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration
RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1      >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1      >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security              Configure ->
SNMP                  Configure ->
DNS Proxy              Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
SysLog                Configure ->
DNS Resolver          Configure ->
Quality of Service     Configure ->
MOCF                  Configure ->
VOIP                  Configure ->
Voice Channels         Configure ->
Dial Plan              Configure ->
AIS Feature            Configure ->

Configure Quality of Service
```

2. To enable **Quality of Service**, scroll <Disabled> to <Enable>, with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].

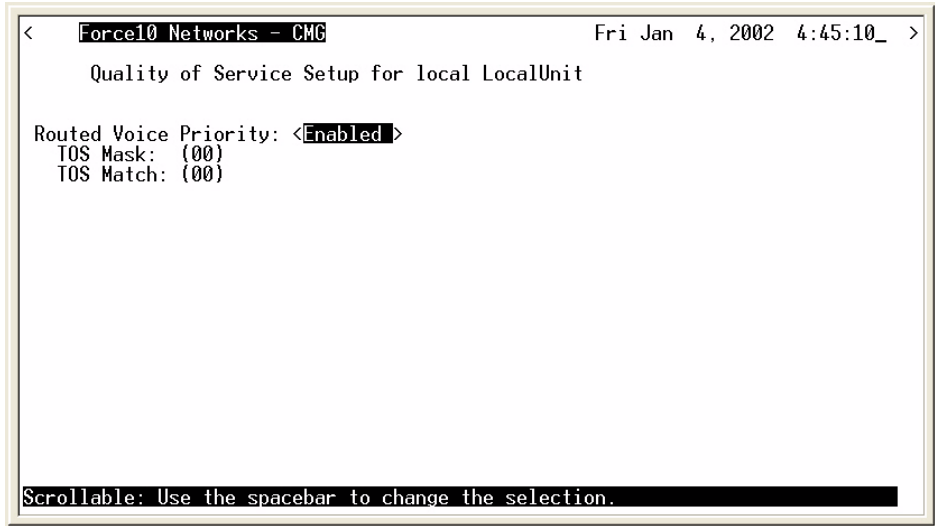
```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  4:43:26_ >
Quality of Service Setup for local LocalUnit

Routed Voice Priority: <Disabled>
```

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

Quality of Service

3. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp "Fri Jan 4, 2002 4:45:10_". The main heading is "Quality of Service Setup for local LocalUnit". Below this, the "Routed Voice Priority" is set to "<Enabled>". Underneath, "TOS Mask" and "TOS Match" are both set to "{00}". At the bottom, a scrollable bar contains the text "Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection."

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 4:45:10_ >
Quality of Service Setup for local LocalUnit

Routed Voice Priority: <Enabled>
TOS Mask: {00}
TOS Match: {00}

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

QUALITY OF SERVICE MENU FIELDS

Routed Voice Priority

<Disable> Disable is the default and will result in no priority handling of routed voice packets.

<Enable> Will all the priority handling of routed voice packets. The following two data fields will appear for configuration.

TOS Mask - Mask to be applied to the TOS byte in the IP header. In the format of 0x (2 hex digits).

TOS Match - TOS byte match value. In the format of 0x (2 hex digits).

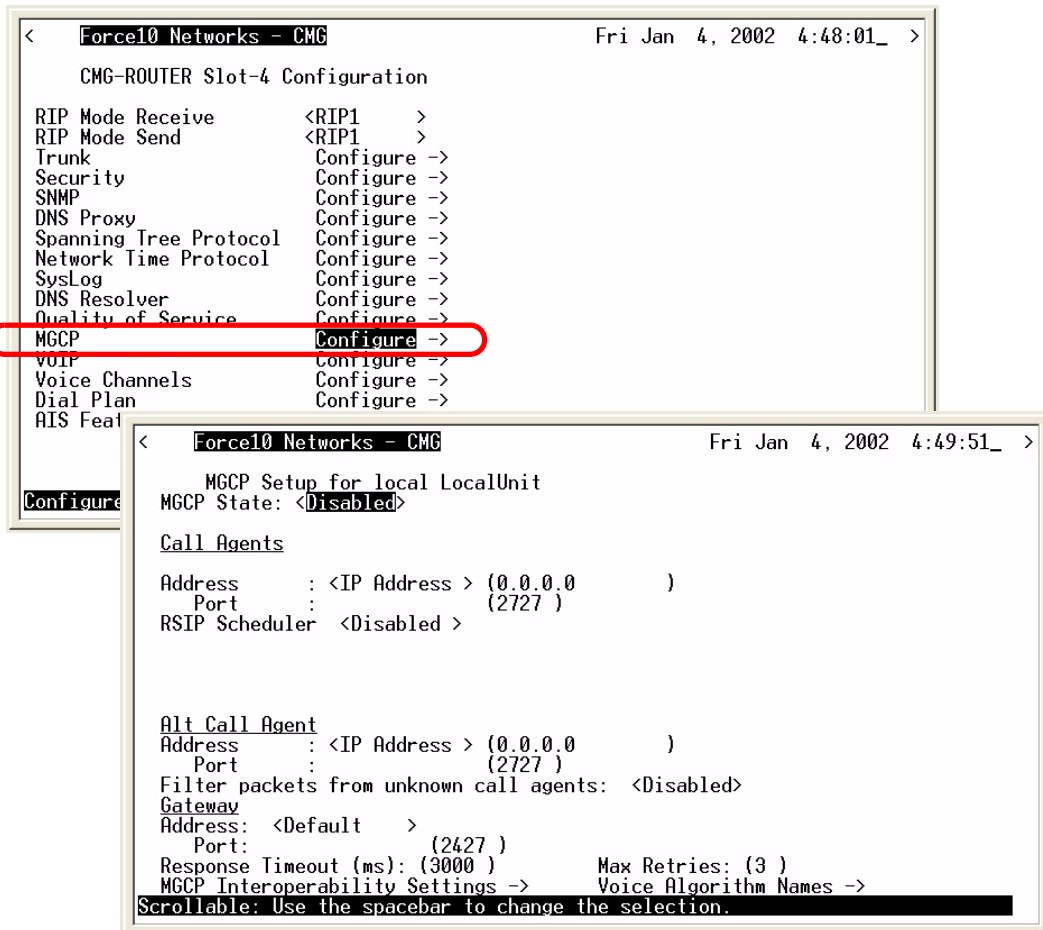
The following table contains the appropriate TOS mask and match for various IP precedence and DiffServ code points:

IP Precedence	Mask	TOS	DiffServ Codepoint	Mask	TOS
IP Precedence = 0	0xE0	0x00	EF = 101110	0xFC	0xB8
IP Precedence = 1	0xE0	0x20	AF11 = 001010	0xFC	0x28
IP Precedence = 2	0xE0	0x40	AF12 = 001100	0xFC	0x30
IP Precedence = 3	0xE0	0x60	AF13 = 001110	0xFC	0x38
IP Precedence = 4	0xE0	0x80	AF21 = 010010	0xFC	0x48
IP Precedence = 5	0xE0	0xA0	AF22 = 010100	0xFC	0x50
IP Precedence = 6	0xE0	0xC0	AF23 = 010110	0xFC	0x58
IP Precedence = 7	0xE0	0xE0	AF31 = 011010	0xFC	0x68
			AF32 = 011100	0xFC	0x70
			AF33 = 011110	0xFC	0x78
			AF41 = 100010	0xFC	0x88
			AF42 = 100100	0xFC	0x90
			AF43 = 100110	0xFC	0x98

MGCP

The following window configures all parameters for MGCP.

1. Select **MGCP Configure** -> and select [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  4:48:01_ >

CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration

RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1      >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1      >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security              Configure ->
SNMP                  Configure ->
DNS Proxy             Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
SysLog                Configure ->
DNS Resolver          Configure ->
Quality of Service    Configure ->
MGCP                  Configure ->
VOIP                  Configure ->
Voice Channels         Configure ->
Dial Plan             Configure ->
AIS Feat              <Disabled>

Configure
```

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  4:49:51_ >

MGCP Setup for local LocalUnit
MGCP State: <Disabled>

Call Agents

Address      : <IP Address > (0.0.0.0      )
Port         : (2727 )
RSIP Scheduler <Disabled >

Alt Call Agent
Address      : <IP Address > (0.0.0.0      )
Port         : (2727 )
Filter packets from unknown call agents: <Disabled>
Gateway
Address: <Default >
Port: (2427 )
Response Timeout (ms): (3000 )           Max Retries: (3 )
MGCP Interoperability Settings ->       Voice Algorithm Names ->
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

MGCP Setup Menu Fields

MGCP State <Enabled>, <Disabled>

Call Agent

Address: <IP Address> Default IP address for MGCP.

<Domain Name> Default domain name for MGCP. Maximum of 43 characters.

Port: The value can range from 0 to 65535. Default is 2727.

RSIP Scheduler

<Disabled> Disables the RSIP scheduler. Default.

<Local> Enables the RSIP scheduler.

<Recv Only> Enables the RSIP scheduler and listens for commands from the RSIP scheduler server.

When set to <Local> or <Recv Only>, the following RSIP scheduler fields are available:

Normal

The rate at which RSIP messages are sent during Normal mode. The default is 60 per minute. The range is 0 - 3600. Select units from <MIN>, <HRS>, and <SEC>.

Fallback

The rate at which RSIP messages are sent during Fallback mode. The default is 30 per minute. The range is 0 - 3600. Select units from <MIN>, <HRS>, and <SEC>.

Threshold

The number of unsuccessful RSIP messages that must be sent to cause the transition from Normal to Fallback mode. The range is 0 - 255. The default is 3.

Randomize(%)

The randomization percentage to be introduced into the periodic RSIP intervals. The range is 0 - 50. The default is 20. A value of 0 disables randomization.

When set to <Recv Only>, the following additional RSIP scheduler fields are available:

Quiet Timeout (mins)

The amount of time to wait for an RSIP scheduler server message before moving from the Quiet state to Start state. The range is 0 - 3600 minutes. The default is 60 minutes.

RSIP Server - Address

The IP address or domain name of the RSIP scheduler server. Choose <IP Address> or <Domain Name>. The IP address must be in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is between 0-255. The domain name must be enclosed in quotes, with a maximum length of 41 characters.

RSIP Server - Port

The port number of the RSIP scheduler server. The default is 2727.

Alt Call Agent

Address: <IP Address> Secondary IP address for MGCP.

<Domain Name> Secondary domain name for MGCP. Maximum of 43 characters.

Port: Secondary port, value can range from 0 to 65535. Default is 2727.

Filter packets from unknown call agents

<**Disabled**> Disable this filter. Default.

<**Enabled**> Prevents the CMG from accepting MGCP messages from call agents except those that have been explicitly configured via Primary or Secondary Call Agent.

Gateway

Address: <Default> DNS domain name/IP address configured for the WAN/LAN interface.

< IP Address> The IP address for the gateway ID in the MGCP header.

<Domain Name> The domain name for the gateway ID in the MGCP header. The Domain Name form ca be used regardless of wether or not DNS is enabled.

Port: The value can range from 0 to 65535. Default is 2427.

Response Timeout (ms)

The value can range from 0 to 65535. Default is 3000 milliseconds (3 seconds).

Max Retries

The value can range from 1 to 10. Default is 3.

MGCP Interoperability Settings - >

Select this field and press [ENTER].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  4:54:58_ >

  MGCP Setup for local LocalUnit
  MGCP State: <Disabled>

  Call Agents
  Address      : <IP Address > (0.0.0.0                )
  Port         :                (2727 )
  RSIP Scheduler <Disabled >

  Alt Call Agent
  Address      : <IP Address > (0.0.0.0                )
  Port         :                (2727 )
  Filter packets from unknown call agents: <Disabled>
  Gateway
  Address: <Default      >
  Port:                (2427 )
  Response Timeout (ms): (2000 )
  MGCP Interoperability Settings ->
  Max Retries: (3 )
  Voice Algorithm Names ->
  Configure MGCP Interoperability Settings
```

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  4:56:45_ >

  MGCP Interoperability Setup for local LocalUnit

  Version:                <IETF 1.0 >
  Delay Alert:             <Disabled>
  Hookswitch Reporting:   <Always >
  Default IETF Event Package: <DTMF >
  PiggyBacking:           <Disabled >
  Address Format:          <Brackets >
  Dialstring Format:       <Commas >
  SDP Mode:               <Full >
  Parse Mode:             <Lenient >
  Quarantine Notification Handling: <Step >
  Quarantine Event Handling: <Process >
  RSIP Wildcard:          <Enabled >
  RSIP Forced:            <Enabled >
  MGCP Keep-Alive Timeout: (0 )
  MGCP Type of Service:   (00)
  LCO Codecs:             <Enable >
  LCO Ptime:              <Enable >
  SDP Codec Ordering:     <Rdesc Order>

  Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

MGCP Interoperability Menu Fields

Version

<**IETF 0.1**> IETF MGCP version 0.1, as specified in an IETF MGCP Internet draft.

<**IETF 1.0**> IETF MGCP version 1.0, as specified in an IETF RFC 3435 (default).

<**NCS**> Packet Cable MGCP version NCS 1.0

Delay Alert

<**Disabled**> Allow ringing the terminating subscriber before remote SDP is received (default).

<**Enabled**> Delay ringing the terminating subscriber until remote SDP is received.

Hookswitch Reporting

<**Always**> Always report hookswitch events (default).

<**On Request**> Wait for a request from the call agent before reporting hookswitch events.

Default IETF Event Package

<**DTMF**> Will set the DTMF package the default.

<**General**> Will set the General package the default.

<**Line**> Will set the Line package the default.

PiggyBacking

<**Disabled**> Disallow sending of piggyback commands (default).

<**Enabled**> Allow sending of piggybacked commands.

Address Format

<**Brackets**> MGCP will place brackets around IP addresses (default).

<**No Brackets**> MGCP will not place brackets around IP addresses.

Dialstring Format

<**Commas**> Insert commas between digit events (default)

<**No Commas**> Do not insert commas between digit events.

SDP Mode

<**Full**> SDP section contain all mandatory lines (v, o, s, c, t, m)

<**Minimal**> SDP section contain only necessary lines (v, c, m) plus a. Which are the only lines really used for setting VoIP media stream parameters.

Parse Mode

<**Lenient**> Do not return an error response in benign situations (default).

<**Strict**> Return an error response for all protocol errors or requests for unavailable functions.

<**Verbose**> Do not return an error response in benign situations, but log the event.

Quarantine Notification Handling

<Loop> Can generate multiple notifications to a request notify.

<Step> Generate at most one notification to a request notify (default).

Quarantine Event Handling

<Discard> Discard events that are in the quarantine buffer.

<Process> Process events that are in the quarantine buffer (default).

RSIP Wildcard

<Disabled> Allows interoperability with call agents that require RSIPs to be channel specific.

<Enabled> Enable interoperability with call agents that require the RSIP by issuing a single wildcard RSIP at those times when all endpoints are transitioning.

RSIP Forced

<Enabled> Enable sending MGCP RSIP RM: Forced messages (default).

<Disabled> Disable sending MGCP RSIP RM: Forced messages.

MGCP Keep-Alive Timeout

Use this menu to configure a keep-alive timer that will cause the CMG to re-send RSIP restart messages on expiration. When enabled, this countdown timer is reset every time an MGCP message is received from the Call Agent. On expiration, the CMG will react by starting periodic transmission of a wildcard RSIP restart MGCP message to each of the configured Call Agents until it is acknowledged.

Enter 1-255 minutes, 0 to disable.

MGCP Type of Service

Range is 0 to FF hexadecimal.

LCO Codecs

<Disable> - The LCO CODEC list is ignored. The configured CODEC algorithm preference is used to determine which CODECs are used for a call, and the initial priority ordering

<Enable> - The LCO CODEC list is used to determine which CODECs may be used for the call, and determines the initial priority ordering of CODECs.

LCO Ptime

<Disable> - The LCO ptime is ignored. The configured CODEC ptime preference, as defined in the *set (router) voip ptime* CLI command, is used instead to determine which ptime is to be used for a call, for a particular CODEC.

<Enable> - The LCO ptime is used to determine which packetization times may be used for the call.

SDP Codec Ordering

<LCO Order> - The SDP CODEC priority order will follow the LCO settings.

<Rdesc Order> - The SDP CODEC priority order will follow the Remote Descriptor.

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

MGCP

Voice Algorithm Names - >

Select this field and press [ENTER].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 4:59:40_ >

MGCP Setup for local LocalUnit
MGCP State: <Disabled>

Call Agents
Address      : <IP Address > (0.0.0.0      )
Port         : (2727 )
RSIP Scheduler <Disabled >

Alt Call Agent
Address      : <IP Address > (0.0.0.0      )
Port         : (2727 )
Filter packets from unknown call agents: <Disabled>
Gateway
Address: <Default >
Port: (2427 )
Response Timeout (ms): (3000 )
MGCP Interoperability Settings -> Max Retries: (9 )
Configure Voice Algorithm Names Voice Algorithm Names ->
```

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 5:00:39_ >

MGCP Voice Algorithm Names Setup for local LocalUnit

Algorithm ID      Algorithm Alias
g711mu            ( )
g711a             ( )
g729A             ( )
g726_16           ( )
g726_24           ( )
g726_32           ( )
g726_40           ( )

Editable: Please enter a value.
```

Voice Algorithm Name Fields

Algorithm ID

Standard voice coding algorithms.

Algorithm	Definition
g711mu	G.711 coding for voice channels mu-law
g711a	G.711 coding for voice channels A-law
g729A	G.729A coding for voice channels compression At 8 Kbps
g726_16	G.726 coding for voice channels at 16 Kbps
g726_24	G.726 coding for voice channels at 24 Kbps
g726_32	G.726 coding for voice channels at 32 Kbps
g726_40	G.726 coding for voice channels at 40 Kbps

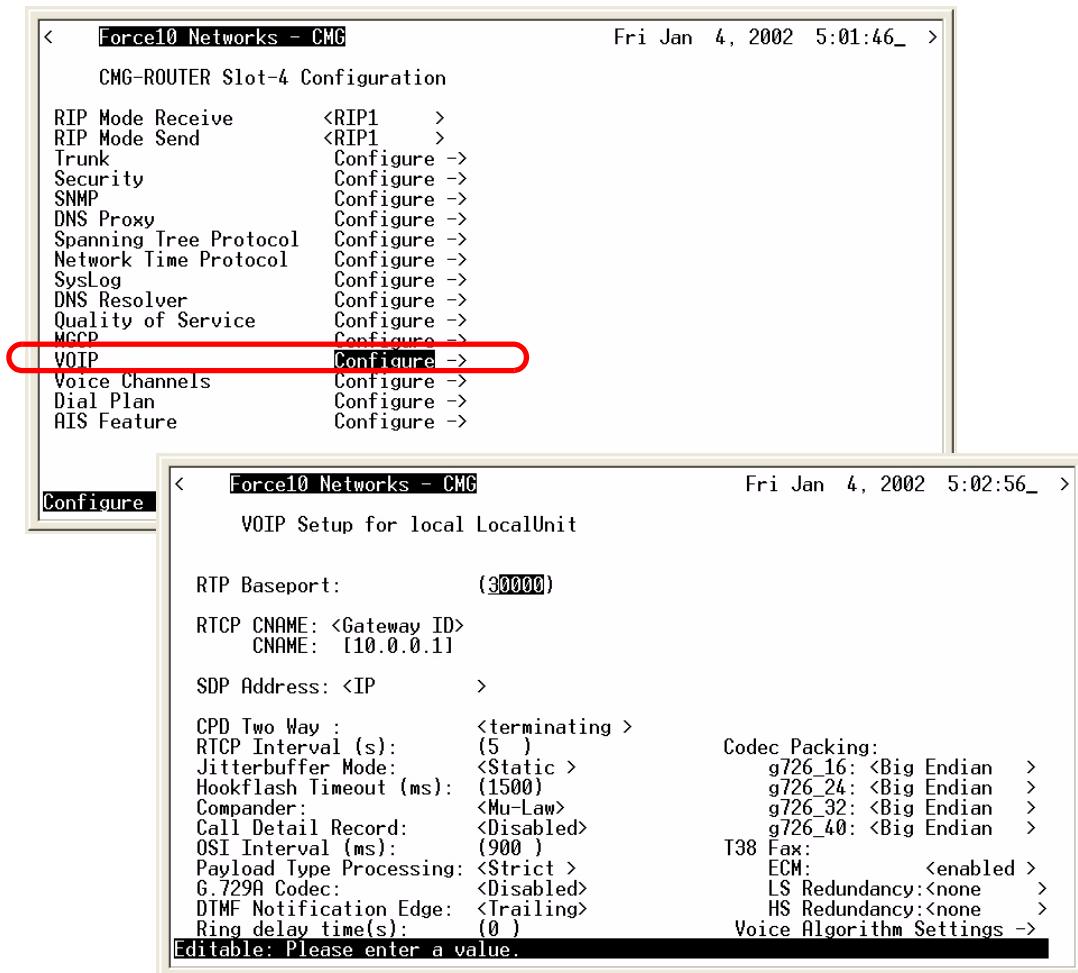
Algorithm Alias

An alias name for the corresponding algorithm. Maximum of 16 characters.

VoIP

The following window configures all VoIP parameters.

1. Select **VOIP Configure ->** and select [ENTER].



VoIP Setup Fields

RTP Baseport - Defines the base UDP port to be used when allocating ports for transmitting or receiving RTP packet streams in VoIP calls. Range is from 1025 - 65535, default is 30000.

RTCP CNAME - Defines the name to be used for the CNAME file of Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) packets.

<Gateway ID> - To use the Gateway ID in the CNAME.

<Custom> - Identifies the gateway, maximum of 63 characters.

SDP Address - Defines the Session Description Interval.

<IP> - Use the CMG IP address.

<Custom> - Use the following address.

<Gateway ID> - Use the MGCP gateway ID.

<Domain Name> - Use the DNS domain name if DNS is enabled or CMG IP address if DNS is disabled.

CPD Two Way - Defines the Calling Party Disconnect behavior when CPD is enabled for voice channels (see *"Voice Channels" on page 3-47*). **Note:** If CPD is disabled, this setting has no effect.

<Terminating> - Apply CPD to terminating calls only.

<Both> - Apply CPD to both terminating and originating calls.

RTCP Interval(s) - Defines the time interval between RTCP reports. Interval time is in seconds, range is 0 to 255. If zero, RTCP reporting time is turned off. Default is 5 seconds.

Jitterbuffer Mode - Sets the dynamic delay adjustment to minimize delay through the jitter buffer, or maintain a static average delay through the jitter buffer.

<Dynamic> - Perform dynamic delay adjustment to minimize delay.

<Static> - Maintain a static average delay, equal to two times the packet time (default).

Hookflash Timeout (ms) - Defines the flash maximum time in milliseconds. This is the time beyond which a disconnect, rather than a hookflash event, is declared. The default hookflash time is 1500 milliseconds. Range is between 500 and 1500 milliseconds or 0. Flash event processing may be turned off by setting this parameter to zero.

Componder - Defines the companding algorithm to use with the PCM (G.711) voice stream to/from the TDM side of a connection. The default companding algorithm is mu-law. The companding algorithm chosen for the CMG must match the companding used on the associated TDM-side connected interface channel, i.e. FXS ports and/or T1/E1 channels.

<A-Law> - The companding algorithm used in Europe and elsewhere.

<Mu-Law> - The companding algorithm used in North America.

Call Detail Record

<Disabled> - Disables call detail recording.

<Enabled> - Enables call detail recording.

OSI Interval (ms) - Defines the OSI wink time. Range is 500 to 2500, with a default of 900 ms.

Payload Type Processing - Allows the unit to exchange RTP with non-specification compliant gateways.

<**Lenient**> - Allows non-spec gateways.

<**Strict**> - Does not allow non-spec gateways (default).

G.729A Codec - Enables or disables the G.729 codec.

The CMG. G.729A is available only after the software key for this feature has been entered.

<**Disabled**> - Disables G.729A codec.

<**Enabled**> - Enables G.729A codec. This is the default, if the feature software key has been entered.

DTMF Notification Edge - Configures the CMG to notify DTMF digits on the leading or trailing edge.

<**Leading**> - Setting this configuration item to leading edge shall cause the CMG to act on DTMF digits, for collection or notification purposes, at the time the key is pressed.

<**Trailing**> - Setting this configuration item to trailing edge shall cause the CMG to act on DTMF digits at the time the key is released.

Ring Delay Time(s) - For ground start systems that answer quickly, this setting provides a delay during which a ringback signal is returned to the calling end before the call is automatically answered. Range is 0 to 10 seconds, with a default of 0.

Codec Packing - Defines bit order of RTP voice. Allowing interop with various VoIP equipment.

<**Big Endian**> - With big endian architecture, the leftmost bytes (lower address) are most significant (default).

<**Little Endian**> - With little endian architecture, the rightmost bytes are most significant.

T38 Fax

Note: For the T.38 Fax to operate the following must be set:

- CMG. G.729A feature must be enabled, with a software key
- Specified voice channel has Fax configured as T38reserved or T38
- G.729A codec is enabled

ECM - Enables/Disables the CMG's fax T.38 Error Correction Mode capability during fax negotiation for the entire card. Default is <enabled>.

LS Redundancy - Configures the number of duplicate packets to transmit for the Low Speed V.21-based T.30 fax protocol portion of a T.38 fax call for the entire card. Options are <none>, <1 packet>, through <8 packets>. Default is <none>.

HS Redundancy - Configures the number of duplicate packets to transmit for the High Speed T.38 fax image data of a fax call for the entire card. Options are <none>, <1 packet>, <2 packets>, <3 packets>. Default is <none>.

Voice Algorithm Settings - >

Select the field and select [ENTER] to open the window.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  5:22:24_ >

VOIP Setup for local LocalUnit

RTP Baseport:                (30000)

RTCP CNAME: <Gateway ID>
CNAME: 110.0.0.11

SDP Address: <IP            >

CPD Two Way :                <terminating >
RTCP Interval (s):          (5 )
Jitterbuffer Mode:          <Static >
HookFlash Timeout (ms):     (1500)
Compander:                  <Mu-Law>
Call Detail Record:         <Disabled>
OSI Interval (ms):          (900 )
Payload Type Processing:     <Strict >
G.729A Codec:               <Disabled>
DTMF Notification Edge:     <Trailing>
Ring delay time(s):         (0 )

Codec Packing:
g726_16: <Big Endian  >
g726_24: <Big Endian  >
g726_32: <Big Endian  >
g726_40: <Big Endian  >
T38 Fax:
ECM: <enabled >
LS Redundancy:<none >
HS Redundancy:<none >

Voice Algorithm Settings ->
Configure Voice Algorithm Settings
```

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  5:21:46_ >

VOIP Algorithm Settings Setup for local LocalUnit

Algorithm ID  SDP Name          RTP          RTP
              SDP Name          Payload Type  Ptime (ms)

g711mu        (pcmu)          (0 )         <20>
g711a         (pcma)          (8 )         <20>
g729a         (g729A)         (18 )        <20>
g726_16       (g726-16)       (102)        <20>
g726_24       (g726-24)       (98 )        <20>
g726_32       (g726-32)       (2 )         <20>
g726_40       (g726-40)       (99 )        <20>
dtmf_relay    (telephone-event) (97 )
nse events    (X-NSE)          (100)

Editable: Please enter a value.
```

VoIP Algorithm Fields

SDP Name - Defines the dynamic payload name to be used for the specified algorithm in the Session Description Protocol (SDP) part of MGCP connection commands. The name has a maximum of 16 characters.

RTP Payload Type - Defines the dynamic payload type to be used for the specified algorithm in the Session Description Protocol (SDP) part of MGCP connection commands.

RTP Ptime (ms) - Defines the default packetization time for specified algorithm. The packetization time determines the frequency at which RTP packets are transmitted. For all algorithms other than G.729a, the setting options are <10>, <20> or <30> milliseconds. For the G.729a the range is <10> through <80> in increments of 10.

Voice Channels

The following window configures all parameters for Voice Channels.

1. Select **Voice Channels** **Configure ->** and select [ENTER].

Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 5:24:05_ >

CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration

RIP Mode Receive	<RIP1 >
RIP Mode Send	<RIP1 >
Trunk	Configure ->
Security	Configure ->
SNMP	Configure ->
DNS Proxy	Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol	Configure ->
Network Time Protocol	Configure ->
SysLog	Configure ->
DNS Resolver	Configure ->
Quality of Service	Configure ->
MGCP	Configure ->
VOIP	Configure ->
Voice Channels	Configure ->
Dial Plan	Configure ->
AIS Feature	Configure ->

Configure

Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 4, 2002 5:25:23_ >

Voice Channel Setup for local LocalUnit

Start Channel: (1) End Channel: (1)

Channel Status:	<Enabled >				
Event Log:	<None >				
Endpoint Prefix:	{aaln }				
Endpoint Suffix:	{1 }				
Receive Gain (dB):	(0)	Echo Cancellation:	<Enabled >		
Transmit Gain (dB):	(0)	Echo Tail (ms):	<16 >		
Silence Suppression:	<Disabled>	VOIP Algorithm Preference Order:			
Type of Service:	(00)	1:	<g711mu > 4:	<g726_24> 7:	<None >
DTMF Relay:	<Disabled>	2:	<g711a > 5:	<g726_32>	
Slash:	<Enabled >	3:	<g726_16> 6:	<g726_40>	
Calling Party Disc:	<Disabled>				
Fax:	<none >	RFC2833 Options:			
Modem:	<none >	Signals:	<disable>		
Signaling Type:	<FXS LS>	Payloadtype:	<default>		
Short Inter Digit:	(4)	Repeat Count:	(2)		
Long Inter Digit:	(16)	Repeat Interval:	(20)		
		Refresh Interval:	(4000)		

Editable: Please enter a value.

Voice Channel Setup Fields

Start Channel - Set the starting channel of which to apply the following voice channel configuration to. Range is 1 to 48, default is 1. Start channel must be less than or equal to the end channel.

End Channel - Set the last channel of which to apply the following voice channel configuration to. Range is 1 to 48. Note: End channel must be equal to or greater than the start channel.

Channel Status - Puts the channel In-Service or Out-of-Service.

<**Enabled**> - Brings the channel back into service. This will cause an RSIP message to be sent to the call agent, with the "restart" value for the Restart Method parameter.

<**Disabled**> - Puts the channel Out-of-Service. Once channel is out-of-service, the call agent cannot access the endpoint IP associated with the voice channel.

Event Log - Sets the parameters of the log.

<**None**> - Event log is set to not log errors.

<**Errors**> - Event log is set to record protocol and other errors only.

<**MGCP**> - Event log is set to record MGCP protocol events.

<**Both**> - Event log is set to record MGCP protocol events and errors.

Endpoint Prefix - Defines the common part of the MGCP endpoint name for a voice channel. The default prefix is "aaln". The Endpoint Prefix is a text string with 1 to 16 characters.

Endpoint Suffix - Defines the variable part of the MGCP endpoint name for a voice channel. The default suffix is the voice channel number. The Endpoint Suffix is a text string with 1 to 16 characters.

Receive Gain (dB) - Defines the gain on the receive side (packet-to-TDM) voice path for the specified voice channel. The default gain is 0 dB.

Transmit Gain (dB) - Defines the gain on the transmit side (TDM-to-packet) voice path for the specified voice channel. The default gain is 0 dB.

Silence Suppression - Enables or disables silence suppression as the default for voice calls for one or more voice channels.

<**Disabled**> - Do not use silence suppression unless overridden by the call agent.

<**Enabled**> - Use silence suppression if possible, with no override by the call agent.

Type of Service - Defines the default value for the Type of Service (TOS) in the IP header of outgoing VoIP packets for the specified channel. The initial default is zero. The definition of the TOS byte is provided in IETF RFC 791 for the original method of packet classification, and in RFC 2474 for the differentiated service method of classification. In the original classification scheme, the first (leftmost) 3 bits of the TOS byte represents the "precedence" or priority. Bit 4 (from the left) indicates optimize for delay. Bit 5 indicates optimize for throughput. Bit 6 indicated optimize for reliability.

DTMF Relay - Enables or disables the relay of DTMF packets as per RFC 2833.

<Disabled> - Disables DTMF Relay as the default for voice calls.

<Enabled> - Enables DTMF Relay as the default for voice calls. Default.

Slash - Removes implied slash between endpoint and suffix and prefix.

<Disabled> - Suppress the use of a slash between the endpoint prefix and suffix.

<Enabled> - Insert a slash between the endpoint prefix and suffix.

Calling Party Disc - When the CMG receives a disconnect message, and the leg being disconnected is the only leg of a call remaining, CPD is applied to the call as follows:

<Disabled> - Do not apply CPD.

<Enabled> - Apply CPD. (Use the "CPD Two Way" setting, described on *page 3-43*, to specify whether CPD is applied to both the terminating and originating call or just to the terminating call.)

<Osi> - Apply CPD to either terminating or originating calls, only if the channel has received an OSI signal event notification.

Fax - Sets the fax handling for this endpoint.

Note: For the Fax to operate the following must be set:

- CMG G.729A feature must be enabled, with a software key
- Specified voice channel has Fax configured as T38reserved or T38
- G.729A codec is enabled

<none> - Fax calls to/from the voice channel are handled as normal voice calls. **Note: G711mu is the only codec that will result in good fax and modem calls. In this mode echo cancellation must be OFF for modem calls, and ON for fax calls.**

<bypass> - Fax calls to/from the voice channel are handled using the fax bypass procedure (Gateway-controlled fax bypass using NSEs). After a call is connected to the channel in voice mode, if a fax tone is detected on the channel, the CMG will transmit NSEs to the remote gateway to tell it to switch to a G.711 codec and then it will switch to a G.711 codec itself for that channel and disable silence suppression. For the switchover to be successful, the remote gateway must also switchover to G.711. The form of G.711 (mu-law or A-law) to which the codec is switched will be the form which has the highest priority in the negotiated codec list. **Note: Either G711mu or G711a must be on the algorithm preference list for Fax Bypass to work.**

Profile Directory:Router Card Profile

Voice Channels

<**T38**> - Fax calls to/from the voice channel are handled using T.38 method (Gateway-controlled T.38 fax relay using NSEs) if DSP resources are available. When no DSP resources are available (6 active T.38 fax calls) the card will reject the T.38 connect request and revert the channel to fax bypass mode using the G.711 codec.

<**T38reserved**> - Fax calls to/from the voice channel are handled using T.38 method (Gateway-controlled T.38 fax relay using NSEs). Since this method pre-allocates DSP resources, the user can only configure up to 6 T.38 connections per card.

Modem - Sets the modem handling for this endpoint.

<**none**> - Modem calls to/from the voice channel are handled as normal voice calls. **Note: G711mu is the only codec that will result in good fax and modem calls. In this mode echo cancellation must be OFF for modem calls and ON for fax calls.**

<**bypass**> - Modem calls to/from the voice channel are handled using the modem bypass procedure (Gateway-controlled modem bypass using NSEs). After a call is connected to the channel in voice mode, if a modem tone is detected on the channel, the CMG will transmit NSEs to the remote gateway to tell it to switch to a G.711 codec and then it will switch to a G.711 codec itself for that channel and disable silence suppression. For the switchover to be successful, the remote gateway must also switchover to G.711. The form of G.711 (mu-law or A-law) to which the codec is switched will be the form which has the highest priority in the negotiated codec list, or the one offered by the far end gateway. **Note: for modem calls (not fax calls), the gateway that initiated the bypass (terminating gateway) then sends a "Disable echo cancellation" NSEs (193). After this both gateways should turn off echo cancellation.**

Signaling Type

<**FXS LS**> - FXS Loop Start. Default.

<**FXS GS**> - FXS Ground Start.

Short Inter Digit - Configures the short interdigit user dialing timeout on a voice channel. This is the time allowed between dialed digits when the T or I address template specification is in effect. For example, if the address specification is "xxxxT", and 4 digits have been dialed, this short timeout is in effect. If the timer expires, the call will be routed to the destination. If another digit is dialed before the timer expires, address processing will continue, using the long interdigit timeout. The range is 1-10 seconds, with a default of 4.

Long Inter Digit - Configures the short interdigit user dialing timeout on a voice channel. This is the total time allowed between dialed digits after the first, unless short timing is in effect. If the originator does not dial the next digit in this time period, the call is torn down. The range is 1-60 seconds, with a default of 16.

Echo Cancellation - Enables/disables echo cancellation as the default for voice calls for a voice channel.

<Disabled> - Disable echo cancellation as the default for voice calls.

<Enabled> - Enables echo cancellation as the default for voice calls. Default.

Echo Tail (ms) - Defines the maximum round-trip delay expected in the voice path between the CMG and the phone, including acoustical delay at the phone. Options are: <8>, <16>, <24>, <32> and <64>. Default is <16> milliseconds.

VOIP Algorithm Preference Order - Defines the order preference of voice coding algorithms for VoIP calls, on the specified voice channel(s). Up to 6 algorithms can be listed, in order of preference. This list limits the acceptable codecs for a particular voice channel to those specified. This can be used to limit voice channels that have a modem or fax machine attached to use only G.711. Default settings list all algorithms, selections can be changed to none.

RFC2833 Options

Signals

<disable> - Disable signaling in RTP payloads. Default.

<abcd> - Use **abcd** signaling in RTP payloads.

Payload Type

<default> - Will be the value of the DTMF relay telephone event payload type. Default.

<number> - Range between 96-127.

Repeat Count

Set the number of initial RTP message repeats at the time of signal transition. Range is 0-10 repeats. Default is 2.

Note: a repeat of 2 times, in essence is a message, followed by 2 repeats.

Repeat Interval

Set the interval of RTP messages at the time of transition in milliseconds. Range is 1-50 milliseconds, with a default of 5.

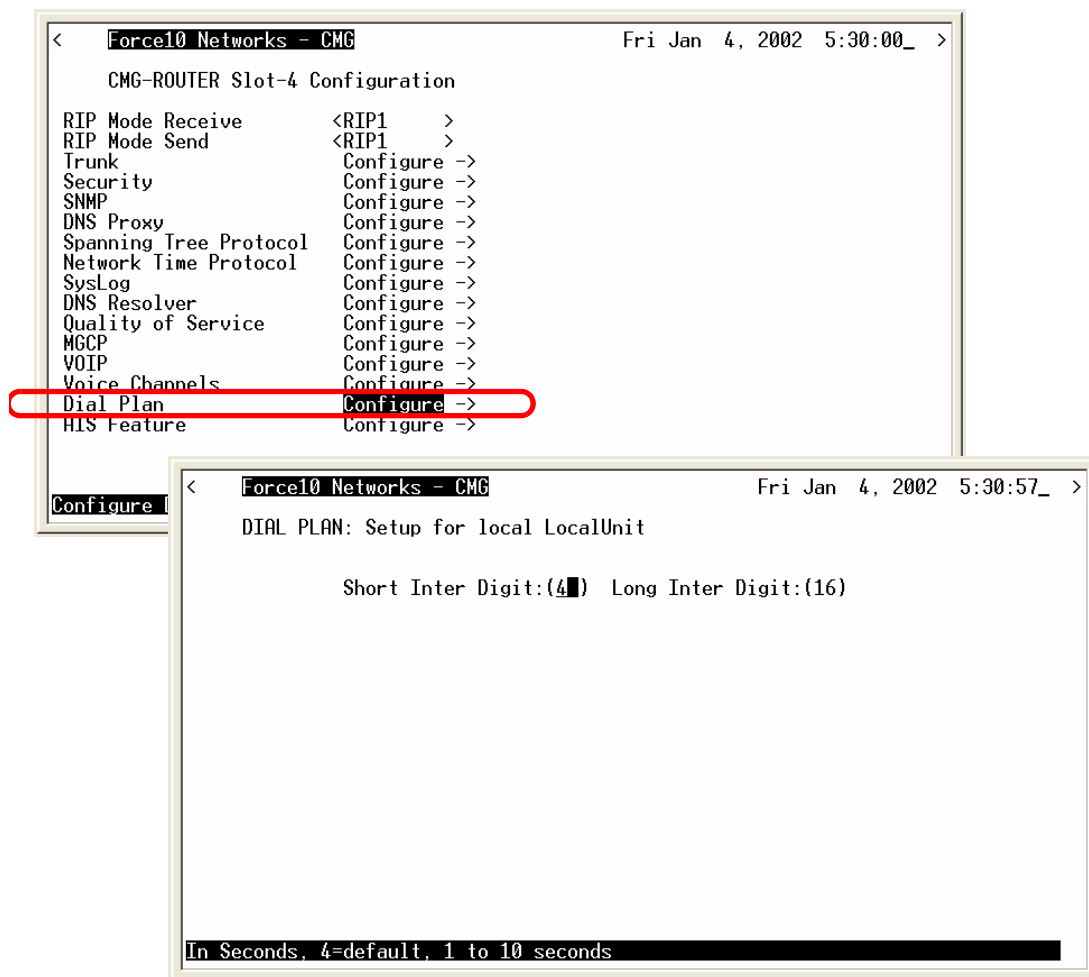
Refresh Interval

Set the periodic refresh interval of RTP signaling states. Range is 500-4000 milliseconds, with a default of 4000.

Dial Plan

The following window configures the dial plan on the CMG Router card. A CMG dial plan is responsible for user dialing timeouts and digit maps.

1. Select **Dial Plan < Configure ->** and select **[Enter]**.



Dial Plan Menu Fields

Short Inter Digit

Specify the time allowed between dialed digits when the T or I address template specification is in effect. For example, if the address specification is "xxxxT", and 4 digits have been dialed, this short timeout is in effect. If the timer expires, the call will be routed to the destination. If another digit is dialed before the timer expires, address processing will continue, using the long interdigit timeout. Enter the number of seconds (1-10). The default is 4.

Long Inter Digit

Specify the total time allowed between dialed digits after the first, unless short timing is in effect. If the originator does not dial the next digit in this time period, the call is torn down. Enter the number of seconds (1-60). The default is 16.

AIS Feature

The AIS Feature enables generation of a T1 alarm indication signal (AIS) on the drop-side MGCP-controlled voice trunk (T1) when an error condition exists on the network-side Ethernet interface. When this feature is enabled, the CMG card sends an AIS request to the controller under either of the following circumstances:

- The CMG Ethernet port enters a failed state (LOS)
- Communication with the Call Agent fails (RSIP or NTFY no response)

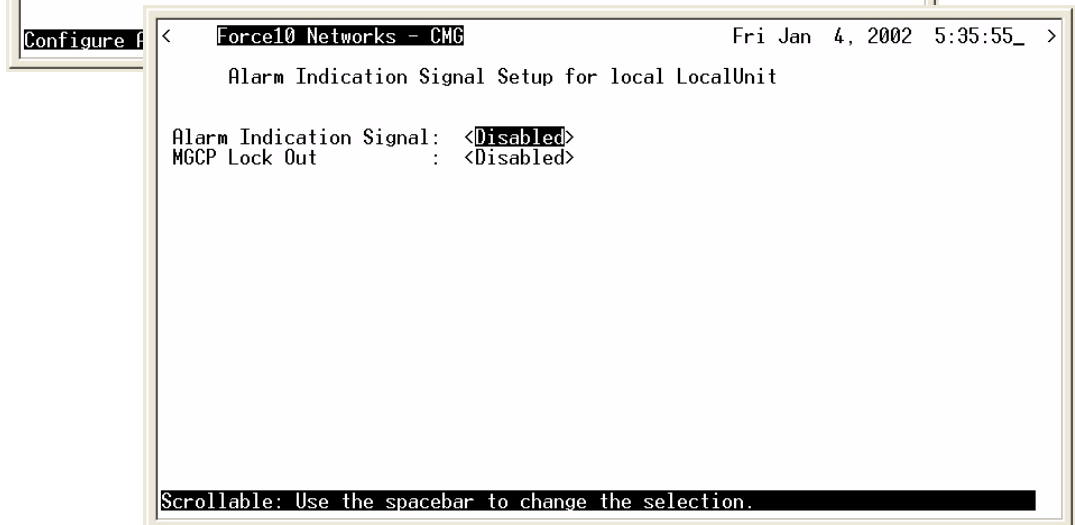
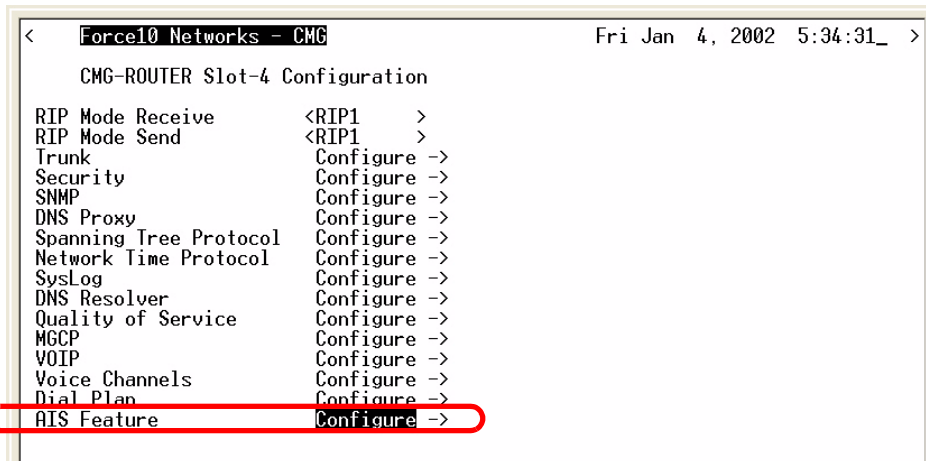
In response, the controller activates AIS on all T1 interfaces that are cross-connected to the CMG VoIP ports. The controller generates an alarm indicating that the T1 is in AIS due to network-side loss of connectivity. When the failure condition clears, the controller clears AIS on the T1 interfaces and clears the associated alarm.

MGCP Lockout

MGCP Lockout enables lockout of all MGCP VoIP channels on the network-side Ethernet interface when an error condition exists on the drop-side T1 voice trunk.

When the MGCP Lockout feature is enabled, the controller sends a "set lockout mode on" message to the CMG card whenever a T1 that is cross-connected to CMG VoIP ports is in an alarm state. In response, the CMG locks out all corresponding MGCP channels. The controller generates a major alarm indicating that the CMG is in a lockout condition due to a drop-side T1 failure. When the T1 alarm clears, the controller sends a "set lockout mode off" message to the CMG. In response, the CMG clears the lockout state.

Select **AIS Feature** < **Configure** -> and select **[Enter]**.



AIS Feature Setup Fields

AIS Feature

<Disabled> - Disable T1 AIS. Default.

<Enabled> - Enable T1 AIS.

MGCP Lock Out

<Disabled> - Disable MGCP lockout. Default.

<Enabled> - Enable MGCP lockout.

CHAPTER 4

Profile Directory:Local Profile

In this Chapter

- Overview
- LAN (Local) Profile Setup
- Static Networks
- Static Addresses
- Filters
- Firewall Filters (Local Profile)
- Advertise Network/Server
- DHCP Server/Client/Relay
- LAN Collision Threshold
- Spanning Tree
- Secondary IP Address
- Link Speed

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Overview

Overview

The Local (LAN) Profile Setup is found in **Configuration <Profile Directory>/LocalUnit LAN <Setup ->**.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:45:53_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu          CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

  Category      Selection
  Management:   <Software Images > ->
  Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
  Verification: <Ping Utility > ->
  Statistics:   <Run-time > ->
  System Reports: <Events > ->
  Exit:         <Logout > ->
```

Scrollable:

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

  Name      Profile Type Recv/Send Profile      State
  Router    CARD          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
  LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
  1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE <Setup ->      <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

< Force10 Networks - CMG
Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:27:36 >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit), LOCAL

Protocol	802.2	Frame Types Eth II SNAP	802.3	LAN Network Updates
IP		X		<Neither >
IPX	[X]	[X]	[X]	<Neither >
Other	[X]	[X]	[X]	

LAN IP	LAN IPX
IP Address: (10.0.0.1)	802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0)	Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
Default Router:(0.0.0.0)	SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
	802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Static Networks
> -Link Speed :
<Auto Negotiate >

Editable: Please enter a value.

Local Profile window

LAN (Local) Profile Setup

The LAN Profile is the largest, most detailed portion of the Router software. The fields on this screen allow definition of how data transmission will occur on the unit's LAN port. This includes defining the protocol(s) that it will use to send and receive data, defining security protocols, specifying which LAN servers and networks will be advertised to WAN units, and establishing specific data filtering options.

The LAN profile is used in conjunction with the WAN profiles. The WAN profiles identify which remote units the local unit can communicate with, as well as the data transmission requirements of each remote.

In addition to the fields on this screen, there are several other areas that directly relate to the communication abilities of the unit. You may use the fields at the bottom of this screen to access the following areas:

- Defining static addresses at the local unit
- Establishing static networks
- Establishing Remote (WAN) advertising
- Establishing DHCP Server/Client/Relay agent parameters
- Defining firewalls
- Defining data filters

The Router can accommodate a maximum of 500 filters, such as those created when establishing static routes or data filters. The following entries consume a filter:

- Configured address, custom and protocol filters
- Static IP networks and static IPX networks
- Enabling any learned items listed on the Advertise Network/Server screen or Filter Network/Server screen
- Static IP and MAC Addresses
- Firewall filters

In a large network, it is necessary to selectively use each of these options so that the number of configured filters is within the maximum allowed.

The Local Profile is used to define the Local (LAN) port parameters for the unit at the present location.

To Set Up a Local Profile:

1. Select **Configuration: <Profile Directory>** from the Main Menu, and select **[ENTER]**.

**Local
Profile
window**

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >

Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type Recv/Send Profile State
Router    CARD        <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE <Setup -> <Enabled >
  
```

2. Select **LAN <Setup ->** and select **[ENTER]**.

**LAN
Profile
Window**

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:27:36 >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit), LOCAL

Protocol  802.2  Frame Types  LAN Network
          802.3  Eth II SNAP 802.3  Updates
IP         X
IPX        [X] [X] [X] [X] <Neither >
Other      [X] [X] [X] <Neither >

          LAN IP
IP Address: (10.0.0.1 )
Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0 )
Default Router:(0.0.0.0 )

          LAN IPX
802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Static Networks > -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >
Editable: Please enter a value.
  
```

Local Profile Setup Menu Fields

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit)

The (LocalUnit) is the default name for this unit and will be used during the authentication process to ensure this unit's identity. This name can easily be changed by simply typing over the "LocalUnit" and saving when closing this window. This name can be up to 11 characters.

Protocol

This column includes three protocol options, IP, IPX and Other. These protocols are used to define **Frame Types and LAN Network Updates** to be used by this unit.

Frame Types

Define the frame type of the packets that are sent and received by the Router. If a packet is received formatted in a frame type that has not been enabled, the Router will not accept the data.

NOTE: Multiple frame types may be supported simultaneously for IPX and Other protocols.

802.2

When selected (X) this Router may send and receive packets that match the 802.2 format. The 802.2 format complies with IEEE specifications.

Eth II

When selected (X) this Router may send and receive packets that match the Ethernet II format. **Note that the IP protocol commonly uses this format.**

SNAP

When selected (X) this Router may send and receive packets that match the SNAP (Subnet Network Address Protocol) format.

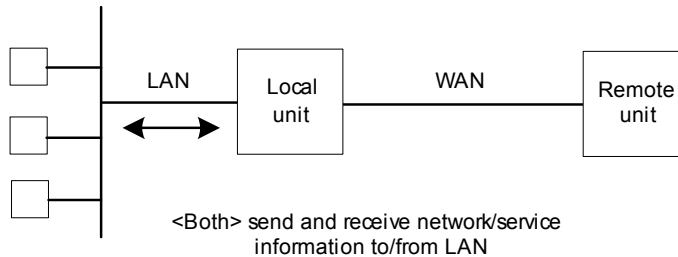
802.3

When selected (X) this Router may send and receive packets that match Novell's X802.3 format.

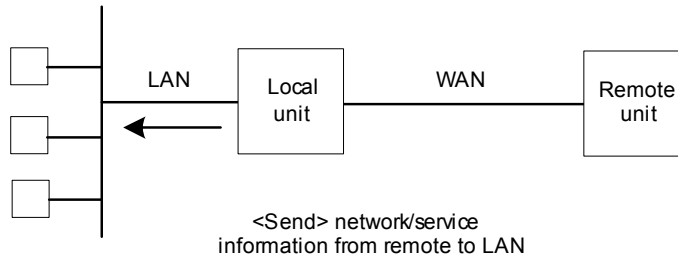
LAN Network Updates

Use the **LAN Network Updates** field to determine whether the Local (LAN) unit will learn, via **RIP** and **SAP** packets, which networks and services are attached to the local LAN, and whether Remote (WAN) networks and services will be advertised to the LAN. If this information is learned, it may be advertised to remote devices if advertising is established. Use the [SPACEBAR] to select from the following options: **<Both>**, **<Neither>**, **<Send>** and **<Receive>**.

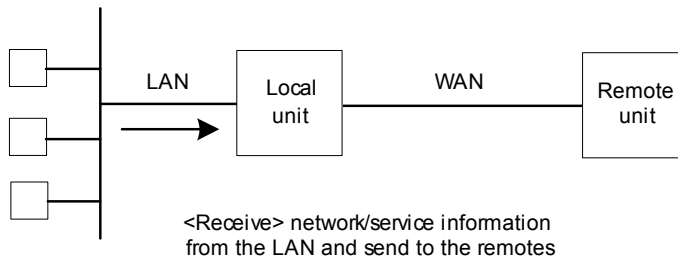
When set to **<Both>**, the local unit will accept the RIPs and SAPs from the LAN and the networks and services learned from the WAN will be broadcast to the LAN.



The **<Send>** value will enable the local unit to send to the LAN information regarding the networks and services that it has learned from remote devices on the WAN. However, the unit will not accept RIPs and SAPs from the LAN.



When this field value is set to **<Receive>**, the local unit will monitor the RIPs and SAPs on the LAN, learn the available networks and services and then pass this information on to the appropriate remote units on the WAN. Network information from the WAN, however, will not be broadcast to the LAN.



The **<Neither>** value will not allow the local unit to send or receive information regarding networks and services on the LAN.

Profile Directory:Local Profile

LAN (Local) Profile Setup

LAN IP:

IP Address

This is the IP Address of the Router, used to uniquely identify the device on the network. The default for this IP Address is 10.0.0.1

Subnet Mask

A subnet mask determines which bits in the IP address are used to identify the network number. The default for the Subnet Mask is 255.0.0.0.

Default Router

This is an optional entry depending on your network configuration. Use this field to identify a router that is physically connected to your LAN. If the Router receives a packet which contains a network that is not known, the packet will be sent to the router identified in this field.

If there are other routers and networks behind the **Default Router** add **Static Network IP information with the Default Router as the Default Gateway**.

If you are communicating with different network domains, you will need to enter the IP Address of your Router as the default router on each workstation or make sure that the local router will redirect to the Router when appropriate, so that they may use the Router to reach the remote site.

LAN IPX:

These fields enable the Router to route IPX to Remote (WAN) networks, even if an IPX server does not exist on the local LAN. Typically, the Router will learn its external network number. However, if the local LAN does not have a server or if the **LAN NETWORK UPDATES** field (see above) is set to **<Neither>**, and you wish to route IPX to Remote (WAN) networks, the external network number must be defined using these fields.

If you are not using IPX on your LAN, these fields will not apply. Please note that these are all hexadecimal entries. For the following see you network administrator for the appropriate numbers. If the frame type is unsupported leave the field set to 0s.

802.2 Ext. Network

Enter the corresponding IPX external network number.

Ethernet II Ext. Network

Enter the corresponding IPX external network number.

SNAP

Enter the corresponding IPX external network number.

802.3 Ext. Network

Enter the corresponding IPX external network number.

Setup < >

Additional setup screens for the Local (LAN) profile. The screen that is accessed depends on the chosen option. Listed below are the available field options:

<Static Networks >

Used to configure static network routes that can be reached locally. See *Static Networks on page 4-11*, for more information.

<Static Addresses >

Configure static addresses for the local devices. See *Static Addresses on page 4-18*, for more information.

<Filters >

Define data filters for this unit. Filtering provides additional security by restricting which packets will be forwarded to/from the LAN. See *Filters on page 4-22*, for more information.

<Firewall Filters >

This option is used to access the Firewall Rules screen which allows the operator to establish firewall filters for this local unit. See *Firewall Filters (Local Profile) on page 4-32*, for more information.

<Advertise Networks/Server >

Enables the unit to advertise all networks and services to all remote units, or to advertise to no remotes. See *Advertise Network/Server on page 4-40*, for more information.

<DHCP Server/Client/Relay >

Establish the Router as a DHCP Server, Client, or Relay Agent. See *DHCP Server/Client/Relay on page 4-46*, for more information.

<LAN Collision Threshold >

Adjust the threshold at which excessive LAN collisions trigger an alarm. See *LAN Collision Threshold on page 4-54*, for more information.

<Spanning Tree>

Configures the global setup for using the Spanning Tree Algorithm as specified in the IEEE 802.1D specification. See *Spanning Tree on page 4-57*, for more information.

<Secondary IP Address >

Add a secondary IP address and subnet to the specified LAN interface. The router will then be capable of routing between subnets on the LAN interface or between the LAN subnets and any WAN subnet. A maximum of 8 secondary IP addresses can be added to the LAN interface. See *Secondary IP Address on page 4-60* for more information.

Link Speed

Sets the ethernet PHY mode and speed for the Router.

NOTE: It is highly recommended that this setting be left at auto-negotiation. Connection of Ethernet devices with incompatible settings can lead to severe performance degradation and errors on a network. See *Link Speed on page 4-63*, for more information.

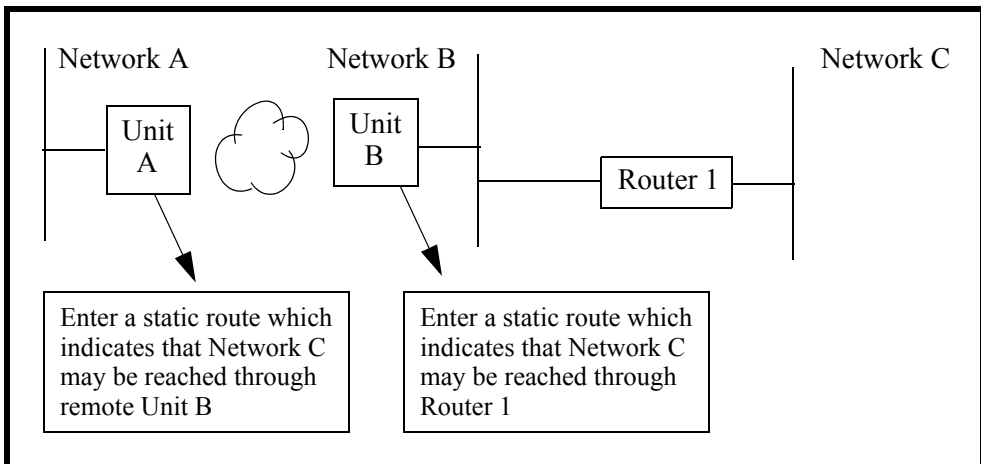
Static Networks

Static networks allow fixed, or pre-determined routes, which increases the control over routing choices within your network. Although Routers are able to dynamically learn routing information through RIP packets, you may wish to disable this feature and manually enter fixed routes. (Disable Learning by choosing the **<Neither>** option in the LAN Network Updates field on the Local (LAN) Profile Setup screen.) Static routing may be preferred if:

- Routers within a network are not configured to advertise, thereby escaping the automatic learning capabilities of the Router
- Advertising is disabled so that access to certain networks may be restricted for security purposes or, to decrease traffic on the LAN and across the WAN
- You wish to keep routing tables small in order to increase LAN/WAN performance

Static routing may also be preferable when managing large networks. Often times it is easier to disable the learning mode and manually enter routes, rather than review each routing table entry and determine its advertising status.

As a static routing example, let's assume that we have three networks, A, B and C. Network B, is connected to Network C via a router, and to Network A via a remote router. Network B may not learn of Network A's existence if advertising was disabled on Router 1. Therefore, if you wish to establish an entry in the routing table indicating a route between Network B and Network C, you can define a static route on Network B.



Profile Directory:Local Profile

Static Networks

To continue with this example, if Network B is not configured to advertise Network C to Network A, then Network A will not dynamically learn of Network C's existence. If you wish to establish a route on Network A to Network C, you must define a static route on Network A that indicates that Network C may be accessed through remote Router B.

To set up a static route, you must define the following routing information:

- The address of the network you wish to reach;
- How far away from the local LAN the network is located (in terms of metric measurement or hops, depending on the protocol)
- Whether the network can be reached on the local LAN (via the LAN port) or through a remote unit.

If you are using the local LAN, you will also need to define the address (either IP or MAC, depending on the protocol) of the first gateway (i.e. router) you will use to reach the network you are defining.

It is important to note that if the static network is reached via a remote unit, it must be defined by choosing the **SETUP <Static Networks>** option on the corresponding Remote (WAN) Profile Setup screen. Static networks that are reached via the local LAN must be defined by choosing the **SETUP <Static Networks>** option on the Local (LAN) Profile Setup screen.

NOTE: All static routes are considered filters and will be applied toward the maximum allowable number of 500 filters.

IP Networks - An Internet Protocol Network.

IPX Networks - Internet Packet Exchange Network. A Novell NetWare's native LAN communications protocol.

To Set Up Static Networks

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the Main menu, and [ENTER].
2. Select **LAN <Setup ->** and [ENTER].

**Profile
Directory
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name_____ Profile Type Recv/Send Profile_____ State____
Router      CARD          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
LocalUnit   LAN           NONE/NONE <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN         NONE/NONE <Setup -> <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Static Networks

3. Select **Setup: <Static Networks>** if **<Static Networks>** is not displayed, scroll to selection with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].

**Local
Profile
Window**



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:38:24_ >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit ), LOCAL

Protocol  802.2  Frame Types  LAN Network
          802.2  Eth II SNAP 802.3  Updates
IP         [X]   [X]   [X]   [X]   <Neither>
IPX        [X]   [X]   [X]   [X]   <Neither>
Other      [X]   [X]   [X]   [X]

LAN IP
IP Address: (10.0.0.1 )
Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0 )
Default Router:(0.0.0.0 )

LAN IPX
802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Static Networks> -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate>

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
```

4. Select <IP Networks> or <Static IPX Networks>. Select [CTRL A] to add a Static Network.

**Static
Networks
Setup (IP)**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:40:20 >
LocalUnit has 1 Static IP Network.
Setup Static: <IP Networks >

  Network      Subnet Mask    Metric    Next Gateway
1. (0.0.0.0)   (0.0.0.0)    (1)      (0.0.0.0)

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Editable: Enter a non-zero IP Address/Subnet Mask in Dotted Decimal Notation.
```

**Static
Networks
Setup (IPX)**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:41:28_ >
LocalUnit has 1 Static IPX Network.
Setup Static: <IPX Networks>

  Network    Hops    Ticks    Next IPX Router
1. (00000000) (1)    (1)    (00-00-00-00-00-00)

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Editable: Please enter a value.
```

Static Networks Fields

Network

Enter the address of the destination network for the route that you are adding. Static networks reached via a remote Router must be configured through the corresponding Remote (WAN) Profile Setup screen. Those configured through the Local (LAN) Profile Setup screen can be reached via the local LAN. If this is an IP network, enter the value in dotted decimal notation. If this is an IPX network, enter the appropriate value in hexadecimal notation.

Subnet Mask

A subnet mask determines which bits in the IP address are used to identify the network number. It is also a method of extending the IP Network Address so that a site may use one network address for several different networks.

Metric

A numeric value indicating the distance from a local network to the destination network. Originally this measured by the number of gateways between the two networks, the number may be modified, either higher or lower, to indicate a desired priority. To ensure a route is considered primary, the value must be less than that of a secondary route. This field is only used on IP networks. Range 1 to 15. (Please note that a value of 1 usually indicates a direct network.)

Hops

See **Metric**, above. When defining the number of hops in a given route, remember to increment the actual number by 1, since your locally attached unit is counted as “1”. This field is only used on IPX networks. Range 1 to 15.

Ticks

Indicates the distance between two networks as measured in time increments (1/18th of a second). Only IPX Networks use this information. Like hops, ticks may be used to designate primary and secondary routes to the same network. Although both the hops and ticks values are considered when determining routing priority, for Novell networks, the tick value is considered first. To designate routing priority between two routes, manipulate the tick value so that the preferred route is given the lower value. Range is 1 to 15.

Next Gateway

Enter the IP Address of the first gateway (router) that the data will use to reach the destination network. Referring back to Example 1, Network B would enter the IP Address of Router 1, since that is the first gateway on the route to Network C. This field is only used on IP Networks.

Next IPX Router

Enter the MAC Address of the next gateway (router) on the route that the data will use to reach the destination network. Referring back to Example 1, Network B would enter the MAC Address of Router 1, since that is the next gateway on the route to Network C. This field is only used on IPX networks.

Static Addresses

Use this screen to define static addresses that are based on the Ethernet MAC or IP Address of a specific device on the local LAN. Typically, the Router would learn of these devices by monitoring LAN/WAN packets. By defining a static address, you are telling the Router the location of the corresponding device before the Router learns where this device resides. Static addresses are typically used in a bridging situation.

Use the Local (LAN) Profile to define static addresses for devices that are located on the LAN. If you wish to establish static addresses for devices on remote LAN's, access this screen using the corresponding Remote Profile.

NOTE: Each static address filter will count toward the maximum number of 500 filters.

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** on the Main menu, and select **[ENTER]**.
2. Select **LAN <Setup ->** and select **[ENTER]**.

Profile Directory Window

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >

Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name	Profile Type	Recv/Send	Profile	State
Router	CARD		<Setup ->	
LocalUnit	LAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	
1. RemoteUnit	WAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	<Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.

3. Select **Setup: <Static Addresses>** if Static Addresses is not displayed scroll to the selection with the [SPACEBAR], and select [ENTER].

**Local
Profile
Window**



```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:44:08_ >
Profile Setup for (LocalUnit ), LOCAL

Protocol  802.2  Eth II SNAP 802.3  LAN Network
IP         X
IPX        [X]  [X]    [X]  [X]    <Neither >
Other      [X]  [X]    [X]

LAN IP
IP Address: (10.0.0.1 )
Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0 )
Default Router:(0.0.0.0 )

LAN IPX
802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Static Addresses> -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
  
```

4. Select [CTRL A] to add static addresses, as needed.

**Static MAC
Address
Setup**

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:45:08_ >
LocalUnit has 1 Static MAC Address Record.
Setup Static: <MAC Address ->
Device Name  MAC Address
1. ( ) (00-00-00-00-00-00)

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Editable: Enter a name for the filter.
  
```

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Static Addresses

Static IP Address Setup

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:47:02_ >

LocalUnit has 1 Static IP Address Record.

Setup Static: <IP Address ->

	Device Name	IP Address
1.	()	(0.0.0.0)

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back

Editable: Enter a name for the filter.

Static Addresses Fields

Setup Static

Use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll between <IP Address > and <MAC Address >. The fields on this screen will vary depending on your choice.

IP Address

A unique, 32-bit identifier for a specific TCP/IP device on a network. The address is in dotted decimal form, xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx = 1-255.

MAC Address

The address for a device as it is identified at the Media Access Control layer in the network structure.

Device Name

Use this field to identify the user-defined name of the LAN device that is associated with this static address. The maximum number of alphanumeric characters for this field is 7.

MAC Address

Enter the MAC Address of the desired device that can be reached via the local LAN. This field is only available if the **Setup Static** field is set to <MAC Address >.

IP Address

Enter the IP Address of the desired device. If the static address is configured through the Local (LAN) Profile Setup screen, the device can be reached via the local LAN. This field is only available if the **Setup Static** field is set to **<IP Address>**.

Filters

Use this screen to review currently enabled data filters or to enable new filters. Data filters are used to determine whether data can be sent or received on the LAN/WAN based on a specific device, protocol type or defined data string. Data filters must be defined using the Custom, Protocol and Address Filter screens prior to being enabled on the current screen. *Filters will not be in effect until they are added to this screen.* Once enabled, they will adhere to the value set in the **Forward Mode** field.

To Define and Enable Filters:

1. Select **Define Filter:** <Custom > - >
2. Scroll with [SPACEBAR] to select Filter type (Custom, Protocol, Address).
3. Select [CTRL A] to add a new Filter.
4. Complete required fields for Filter, see the below for more information in the specific Filter Fields:
Custom Filter, see *Defining Custom Filters on page 4-26*
Protocol Filter, see *Defining Protocol Filters on page 4-28*
Address Filter, see *Defining Address Filters on page 4-30*
5. Select [ESC] to return to the Main Filters window.
6. Select [CTRL A] to Enable this filter
7. Select Filter type, scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to select.
8. Select [ENTER] to enable the Filter. Note: the Filter will appear on the list of Enabled Filters.

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** on the Main menu, and select **[ENTER]**.
2. Select **LAN <Setup ->** and select **[ENTER]**.

**Profile
Directory
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD
LocalUnit LAN             NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->      <Enabled >
```

3. Select **Setup: <Filters >** if Filters is not displayed scroll to the selection with the **[SPACEBAR]**, select **[ENTER]**.

**Local
Profile
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:49:52_ >
Profile Setup for (LocalUnit ), LOCAL

Protocol  802.2  Frame Types  LAN Network
          802.2  Eth II SNAP 802.3  Updates
IP         [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    <Neither >
IPX        [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    <Neither >
Other      [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    <Neither >

          LAN IP
IP Address: (10.0.0.1 )
Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0 )
Default Router:(0.0.0.0 )

          LAN IPX
802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Filters > -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
```

NOTE: Each filter, even if it is not enabled, will count toward the maximum number of 500 filters.

4. Press [CTRL A] to enable filters that have been defined. See the following sections on Defining Custom, Protocol and Address Filters.

Enabled Filter Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:53:52_ >
LocalUnit has 0 Enabled Filters.
Forward Mode: <ALL Frames NOT Matching Filters> Define Filter: <Custom > ->
  Filter Type Source/Dest Filter Name

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Scrollable: Select the port forwarding mode based upon the enabled filters.
```

Filters Fields

Forward Mode

This field determines what data to pass/not to pass, based on this field value and the filters listed on the current window. There are two available values which determine how the Router will handle data to/from the LAN:

<All Frames NOT Matching Filters> any packets matching the filters listed will not be passed (i.e., pass all frames except those matching the enabled filters).

<ONLY Frames Matching Filters> enabled filters will have the PASS action. All packets matching the filters listed will be passed to/from the LAN. Any packets that do not match will be dropped (i.e., will not pass through the Router).

Define Filter

Use this field to open the Define Filter window for the selected filter type. To open this window select the filter type and select **[ENTER]**. The filter windows are used to define the actual filter prior to enabling (adding) it on the current window.

<**Custom**> see Defining Custom Filters on page 4-26

<**Protocol**> see Defining Protocol Filters on page 4-28

<**Address**> see Defining Address Filters on page 4-30

Filter Type

This field value represents the type of filter <**Custom**>, <**Protocol**> or <**Address**>.

Source/Destination

This field is active only with an Address Filter.

<**Source**> - Filters by Source only.

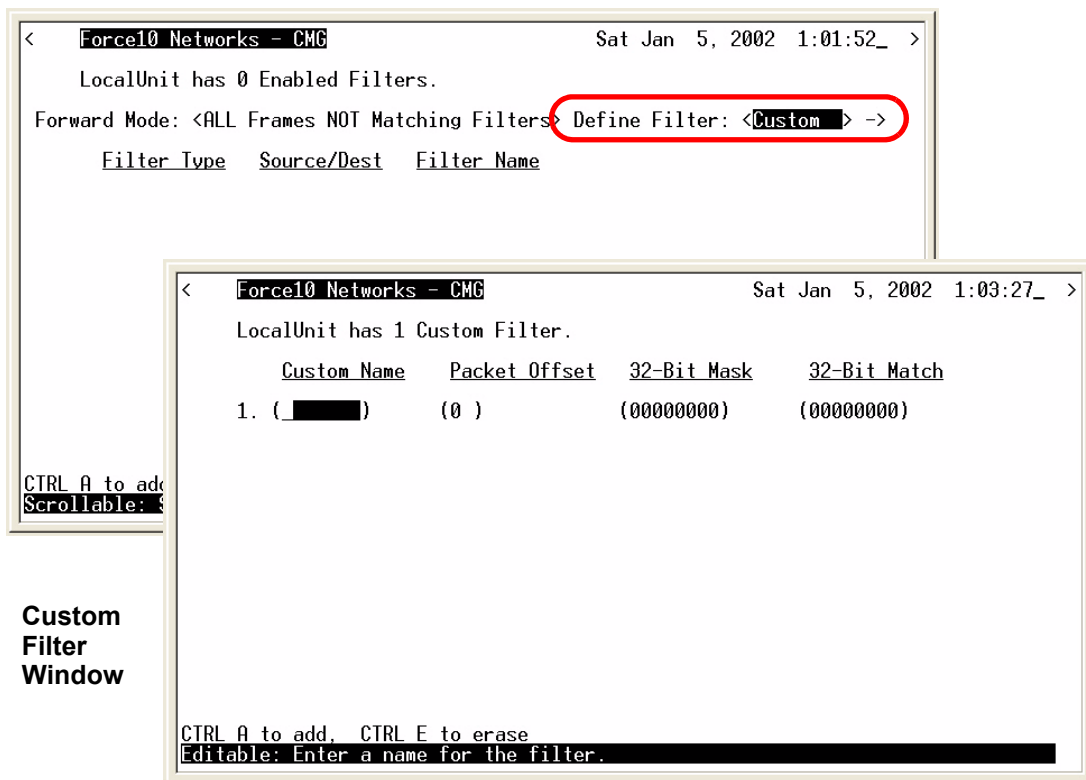
<**Destination**> - Filters by Destination only.

<**Both**> - Filter by Source and Destination.

Filter Name

This field displays the name the filter has been given.

Defining Custom Filters



Custom Filter Window

This screen defines filters that “search” for a matching string of characters within a packet. The defined character string can consist of up to 32 bits. The user must specify:

Custom Name - Filter name can be up to 7 characters.

Packet Offset - designates where in the packet to begin looking for a matching character string. Range is 0 - 60 bytes.

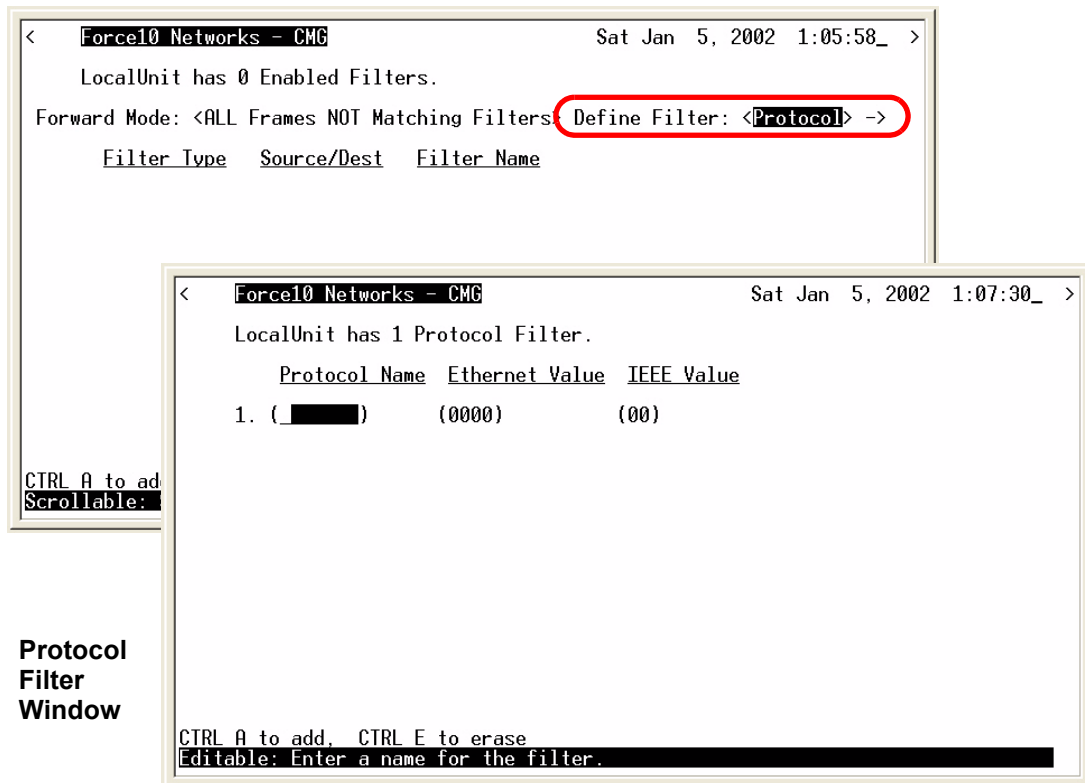
32-Bit Mask - indicates which bits are to be searched for a possible match. Within the mask, a **1** turns a bit ON, **0** is OFF. Only the bits that are turned on (set to 1) will be searched for the match.

32-Bit Match - specifies the character string that the system is searching for. When a match is located, the packet adheres to the **Forward Mode** field value.

To enable a filter return to the Enabled Filter Window ([**ESC**] from this window) and select [**CTRL A**], select filter type (Custom, Protocol or Address) filter will be added to the Enabled Filters window.

NOTE: Each filter, even if it is not enabled, will count toward the maximum number of 500 filters.

Defining Protocol Filters



Use this screen to define filters that are based on specific protocols being used by LAN devices. These filters, when enabled, provide security by restricting LAN/WAN access based on a specific protocol.

Protocol Name - Filter name can be up to 7 characters.

Ethernet Value - Enter the assigned Ethernet value for this protocol, see *Appendix B, Ethernet Protocol Types*.

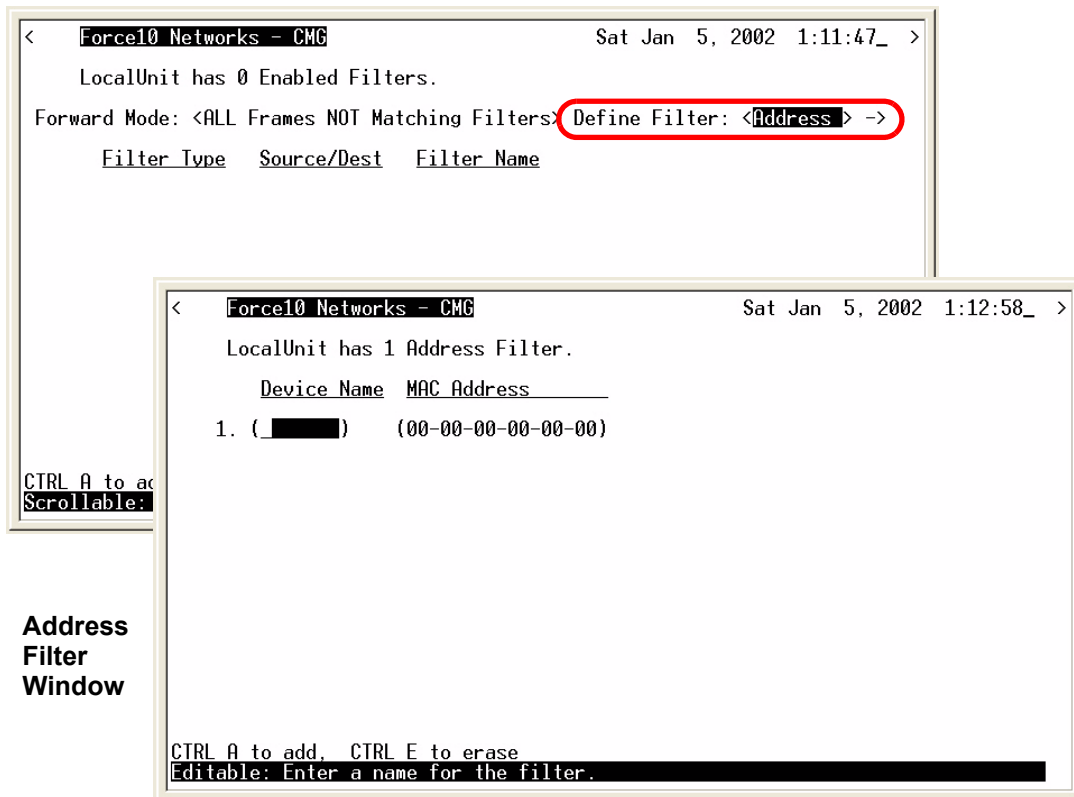
IEEE Value - Enter assigned IEEE value for this protocol. The IEEE value is the same as the DSAP and SSAP values in a SNAP packet.

NOTE: Only identify either an Ethernet or IEEE value, but not both.

To enable a filter return to the Enabled Filter Window ([**ESC**] from this window) and select [**CTRL A**], select filter type (Custom, Protocol or Address) filter will be added to the Enabled Filters window.

NOTE: Each filter, even if it is not enabled, will count toward the maximum number of 500 filters.

Defining Address Filters



Address Filter Window

Use this window to define filters that are based on the Ethernet MAC Address of a specific device. When enabled, these filters provide security by restricting LAN/WAN access based on a device's MAC Address. Address filters are based on either source, destination or both source and destination MAC Addresses.

Device Name - Filter name can be up to 7 characters.

MAC Address - Enter the MAC Address of the LAN device that you are defining as a filter. The system will use the defined MAC Address and the value in the **Forward Mode** to determine whether the packet should be passed or received.

To enable a filter return to the Enabled Filter Window ([ESC] from this window) and select [CTRL A], select filter type (Custom, Protocol or Address) filter will be added to the Enabled Filters window.

NOTE: Each filter, even if it is not enabled, will count toward the maximum number of 500 filters.

Firewall Filters (Local Profile)

A firewall is a method for keeping a network secure from intruders, by using filters to block the transmission of certain types of traffic (services). Once created, firewalls are a security feature that allow only certain types of services to pass in and/or out of your LAN. Each filter consists of a set of drop/pass rules that are applied in the order in which they appear on the list — in other words, rule 1 is applied before rule 2 and so on. This set of rules constitutes a filter for the local profile and will be applied to incoming traffic, outgoing traffic, or both traffic types (service flows).

Firewall Rules Window

< Force10 Networks - CMG Mon Jan 7, 2002 23:37:28_ >

LocalUnit has 2 IP Firewall Rules.

Service(s)	LAN Device(s)	WAN Device(s)	Log
1. SMTP	*	==> *	☒
Last ! Any	*	<== ==> *	☐

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to modify this Firewall Filter Rule.

Symbol	Description
#	Rule Number
!	Pass (no! (blank) indicates Drop)
Services(s)	Lists current service defined
LAN Device(s)	Lists LAN defined for this rule (* indicates any)
==>	Outgoing
<==	Incoming

Symbol	Description
<== ==>	Outgoing and incoming
WAN Device(s)	Lists WAN defined for this rule (* indicates any)
Log	X = Logged in the Event or Alarm log

To Add a Firewall Filter:

WARNING! THE ADDITION OF THE FIRST FIREWALL RULE WILL AUTOMATICALLY SECURE THE UNIT AGAINST ACCESS VIA TELNET (UNLESS THE FIRST RULE EXPRESSLY PERMITS TELNET). TO ENSURE THE ABILITY TO TELNET INTO THE UNIT BY AT LEAST ONE DEVICE, YOU MUST CREATE A RULE INDICATING WHICH DEVICE HAS TELNET ACCESS.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted, and press [ENTER].
2. Select **<Setup ->** on the LocalUnit LAN line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.
Name      Profile Type Recv/Send Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE <Setup ->      <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Firewall Filters (Local Profile)

3. Tab down to **Setup: <Static Addresses>** and scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to **<Firewall Filters>**. Press [ENTER].

**Local
Profile
Window**

< Force10 Networks - CMG Mon Jan 7, 2002 23:28:59_ >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit), LOCAL

Protocol	802.2	Eth II	SNAP	802.3	LAN Network Updates
IP		X			<Neither >
IPX	[X]	[X]	[X]	[X]	<Neither >
Other	[X]	[X]	[X]		

	LAN IP			LAN IPX
IP Address:	(10.0.0.1	)		802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Subnet Mask:	(255.0.0.0	)		Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
Default Router:	(0.0.0.0	)		SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
				802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Firewall Filters > -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

4. Select [CTRL A] to add an IP Firewall Rule.

**Firewall
Filters
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Mon Jan 7, 2002 23:32:01_ >
LocalUnit has 0 IP Firewall Rules.
Service(s) LAN Device(s) WAN Device(s) Log

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
There are no items configured.
```

5. Enter the parameters of the rule, select [ESC] to close the window and save the configuration. See *Firewall Filters Fields on page 4-36* for a description of all fields for the Firewall Setup window.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Mon Jan 7, 2002 23:34:36_ >
IP Firewall Setup for remote
Rule Number: (1)
Action: <Pass>
Service: <SMTP >
Service Establishment: <Outgoing>
Local IP Address/Network: (* )
Remote IP Address/Network: (* )
< > Packets which match this rule

Editable: Enter the position for this rule.
```

Firewall Filters Fields

Rule Number

The rule number defines the order in which the rules are applied. Once there are two or more rules created, the rule number can be changed to put them in the desired order. The **Last!** rule displayed is automatically set after the first rule is defined, and states that the router should drop any service (incoming or outgoing) that has not been addressed in the proceeding rules.

Action: (Pass/Drop)

This column indicates the service(s) that will <Pass> or <Drop> from the remote network to the local network and vice versa. On the Firewall Filters window, the following indicate Pass/Drop:

! in this column = Drop Blank column = Pass

Typically, rules are established with the **Pass** action, since the last rule (which is automatically defined by the software) **Drops** all services not expressly permitted by the previous rule(s). For example, if you wish to deny all transmissions except Telnet, you would create a rule indicating that Telnet has the **Pass** action. The Router software would create the last rule that states the unit should **Drop** all other services.

Since any service that is not expressly permitted to pass will be prohibited, it is important that you thoroughly understand the security policies of your LAN before attempting to create a firewall. We suggest that only experienced Network Administrators create and maintain firewall filters. Incorrectly defined filters may compromise the security and functionality of your LAN.

Service

This field displays the service that this particular rule affects. While the most common services have been pre-defined, there are a few options where you may further define the service to be filtered.

Name	Description
Finger	Display information about users
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
Gopher	Document search and retrieval
HTTP	World Wide Web

ICMP	Internet Control Message Type <Equal> or <Range> = Specify a number or range. Number = 0-65535 Start Number = 0-65535 End Number = 0-65535
NUM	IP protocol number to be specified, see <i>Protocol Number in Firewall Filters on page B-2</i> for a list of these Protocols and the assigned number. Protocol Number = number between 1-255
NNTP	Network News Transfer
Ping	ICMP echo request/reply
POP3	Post Office Protocol Version 3
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol Port <Equal> or <Range> = Specify a number or range. Number = 0-65535 Start Number = 0-65535 End Number = 0-65535
Telnet	User interface to local unit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
WAIS	Wide Area Information Services

Service Establishment

Use this field to establish the transmission direction that will be affected by this rule.

Name	Description
Incoming	All session establishments coming from the local unit that match the value in the Service field will adhere to the value in the Action field.
Outgoing	All transmissions outbound from the LAN toward the local unit that match the value in the Service field will adhere to the value in the Action field.
In/Out	Will affect both incoming and outgoing transmissions.

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Firewall Filters (Local Profile)

Local IP Address/Network

IP Address of the local device or network that this rule will affect. If you enter the address of a local device, this rule will affect only the session establishments of the local device and the destination address entered in the **Remote IP Address/Network** field, below. If this rule is to affect “any” local devices/networks, leave this field with the default asterisk *.

Significant Bits

Use this field to identify the number of bits, from left to right that will be used to match the IP Address field within the data packet with the value entered into the **Local IP Address/Network**. Range is between 1-32.

Remote IP Address/Network

Enter the IP Address of the remote device or network that this rule will affect. If you enter the address of a remote device, this rule will affect only the session establishments of the remote device and the device/network address entered in the **Local IP Address/Network** field, above. If this rule is to affect “any” remote devices/networks, leave this field with the default asterisk symbol *.

Significant Bits

Use this field to identify the number of bits, from left to right, that will be used to match the IP Address field within the data packet with the value entered into the **Remote IP Address/Network**. Range is between 1 to 32.

< > Packets which match this rule

Use this field to indicate whether a rule match should trigger an Alarm or Log entry.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| (Blank) | A transmission match will not trigger an Alarm or Events log entry. |
| Alarm | A transmission match will trigger an Alarm entry. |
| Log | A transmission match will trigger an Events log entry. |

Log or Alarm entries may also be useful when a specific security issue is at stake. For example, if your security policy does not permit Telnetting, you may wish to keep track of all Telnet attempts. As a general rule, however, we do not recommend keeping a log of all rule matches since this may impact system performance and may cause an Event or Alarm screen overflow.

NOTE: When enabled, a single event/alarm will be logged for all TCP session initiations. An event/alarm will be logged for each packet for all UDP transfers. UDP traffic should typically not be allowed across a firewall.

NOTE: All firewall rules are considered filters and will be applied toward the maximum allowable number of 500 filters.

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Advertise Network/Server

Advertise Network/Server

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the Main menu, select [ENTER].
2. Select **LAN <Setup ->** and select [ENTER].

**Profile
Directory
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN           NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN       NONE/NONE  <Setup ->      <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

3. Select **Setup: <Advertise Network/Server>** if Advertise Network/Server is not displayed scroll to the selection with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].

**Local
Profile
Window**

< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:04:46_ >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit), LOCAL

Protocol	802.2	Eth II	SAP	802.3	LAN Network Updates
IP		X			<Neither>
IPX	[X]	[X]	[X]	[X]	<Neither>
Other	[X]	[X]	[X]		

LAN IP		LAN IPX	
IP Address:	(10.0.0.1)	802.2	Ext. Network: (00000000)
Subnet Mask:	(255.0.0.0)	Eth II	Ext. Network: (00000000)
Default Router:	(0.0.0.0)	SAP	Ext. Network: (00000000)
		802.3	Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Advertise Network/Server> -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate>

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

Use these windows to review networks that your unit has discovered through the LAN. By sending out IPX and IP RIP (Routing Information Protocol) and IPX SAP (Service Advertising Protocol) packets and monitoring RIP and SAP packets from other devices, your unit can learn about other networks. The system constantly monitors RIP packets to ensure that the status of the network has remained unchanged. Should a RIP packet indicate a change in status, the unit will update the data in the table and exchange the updated data with all remotes.

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Advertise Network/Server

Advertise Network/ Server Window

Once the local unit has learned of a network, you may choose to have the Router advertise broadcast RIP packets on behalf of the actual network. Selecting which networks you wish your local unit to advertise provides added security by restricting what information is passed on to the remote.

For added control in network advertising, automatic learning may be turned off and, using the Static Network windows, manually enter the network routes to be advertised.

Disable Learning:

On the **LAN Profile setup window** set **LAN Network Updates** to **<Neither>**

On the **WAN Profile setup window** set **WAN Network Updates** to **<Never>**

The **Advertise Network/Server Window** can be used in two ways, depending on which **Selected Items** mode is chosen:

<**Do Not Advertise**> **Selected Items** mode causes the unit to not advertise the learned network to all remotes if you place an **X** next to the selected item.

<**Advertise**> **Selected Items** mode causes the unit to advertise the learned network to all remotes if you place an **X** next to the selected item.

NOTE: Since each network that contains an **X** next to it consumes a filter, choose an approach that consumes the least number of filters. With 15 learned networks of which 5 need to be advertised it uses less filters to <**Advertise**> 5 networks than to select <**Do Not Advertise**> 10.

NOTE: Each selected network will be counted as a filter. A maximum of 500 filters can be defined on the Router.

Advertise Network/Server Fields

Setup

Use this field to identify which networks or server types you wish to review. Options are: <**IP Networks**>, <**IPX Servers**> and <**IPX Networks**>.

Selected Items

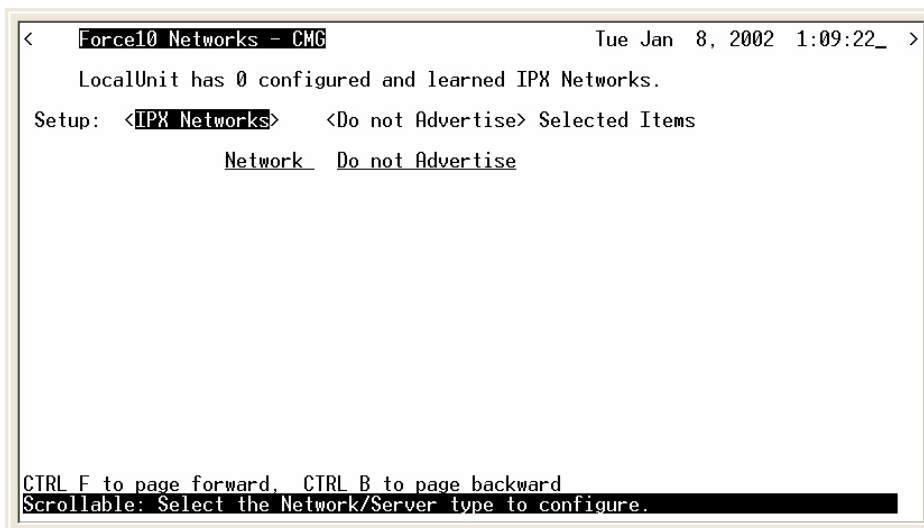
<**Advertise**> With this option selected Networks will advertise to all remote units that are listed in your Profile Directory.

<**Do Not Advertise**> With this option selected Networks will not be advertised.

Network

This field displays the network address of each network learned from the local LAN. If this route was added using one of the Static Network windows, “Static Fltr” will appear before the network address of this entry. If this is not a static route, and has been selected, “Config Fltr” will appear before the network address of this entry. Only static routes for the local unit will display on this window.

IPX Server Advertising



Servers are learned and maintained by the Router in the same way as network tables, by sending out IPX SAP (Service Advertising Protocol) packets and monitoring SAP packets from other devices, the unit learns about other servers. Once a server has been discovered, the information is displayed on this window.

This window may be used in two ways, depending on which **Selected Items** mode is chosen: **<Do Not Advertise> Selected Items** or **<Advertise> Selected Items**. The **<Do Not Advertise>** mode causes the unit to not advertise the learned services. To advertise under this mode, remove the **X** next to the server to advertise. The **<Advertise>** mode causes the unit to advertise all learned services to all remotes. If a specific server under this mode is not to be advertised the **X** must be removed next to the listed server.

Since each server that contains an **X** next to it consumes a filter, you should choose the approach that consumes the least number of filters. For example, if a Router has learned 15 services of which you want to advertise only 5. It would consume fewer filters to set the **Selected Items** field to **<Advertise>** and place an **X** next to the 5 servers to, than to choose **<Do Not Advertise>** and place an **X** next to the 10 servers.

NOTE: Each selected server will be counted as a filter. A maximum of 500 filters can be defined on the Router.

Advertise Network/Server - IPX Server Fields

Network

This field displays the network address of each learned or configured server. If a server has been selected using the **[X]** key, “Config Fltr” will appear before the network address of this entry.

Type

The TYPE field displays the Hex value assigned to each known server. When a server is added using **[CTRL A]**, a Hex value must be defined. If you wish to learn certain services that match a particular server type, manually add an entry specifying the desired Hex value. This setting will enable the unit to learn all services that match the specified service type. This field may be used in conjunction with the NAME field, described below.

Name

This field displays the first 11 characters of the name of each known server. If the server is manually added and a server name is not defined, all servers matching the added type will be learned and the first 11 characters of their names will be displayed. If the server name is defined when the server is manually added, then only servers matching both type and name will be learned.

Selected Items

Use this field to determine whether your Router will advertise the information listed on this window to remote units. Valid field options include **<Do Not Advertise>** and **<Advertise>**. If **<Advertise>** is selected, checked items (with X) will advertise to all remote units in the Profile Directory. If **<Do Not Advertise>** is selected, checked items will not be advertised.

Use the **[CTRL A]** keys to manually configure a service. When manually configuring a service, the following prompt is displayed:

You must define a server type (see **TYPE** field, above), however the corresponding server name may be left blank. If a server name is not defined, all services of the specified type will be learned, regardless of the name.

If the server type and name are specified, only server types that match both values will be learned. Be aware that the NAME value is case and spacing sensitive.

Press **[ESC]** to save changes and return to the Local (LAN) Profile Setup window.

Profile Directory:Local Profile

DHCP Server/Client/Relay

DHCP Server/Client/Relay

Use the options on this window to enable the Router to act as a DHCP server, client, or relay agent. Workstations with DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) client software will generate a broadcast message requesting an IP Address from a DHCP server. As a relay agent, the Router will forward these requests to the appropriate server. When the server assigns the workstation an IP Address, the Router will then send this address back to the appropriate workstation. Using this method, the DHCP server can reside at a Remote (WAN) location and the Router can serve as an agent between requesting workstations and the server. As a DHCP server, the Router can assign up to 254 IP Addresses to DHCP clients on the local LAN. It will not assign to clients across the WAN.

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the Main menu, select [ENTER].
2. Select **LAN <Setup ->** and select [ENTER].

**Profile
Directory
Window**

< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >

Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name	Profile Type	Recv/Send	Profile	State
Router	CARD		<Setup ->	
LocalUnit	LAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	
1. RemoteUnit	WAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	<Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.

3. Select **Setup: <DHCP Server/Client/Relay>**. If not displayed, scroll to the selection with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].

**Local
Profile
Window**



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:11:26_ >
Profile Setup for (LocalUnit ), LOCAL

Protocol  802.2  Frame Types  802.3  LAN Network
          802.2  Eth II SNAP 802.3  Updates
IP         X
IPX        [X]  [X]    [X]  [X]    <Neither >
Other      [X]  [X]    [X]    <Neither >

          LAN IP
IP Address: (10.0.0.1 )
Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0 )
Default Router:(0.0.0.0 )

          LAN IPX
802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

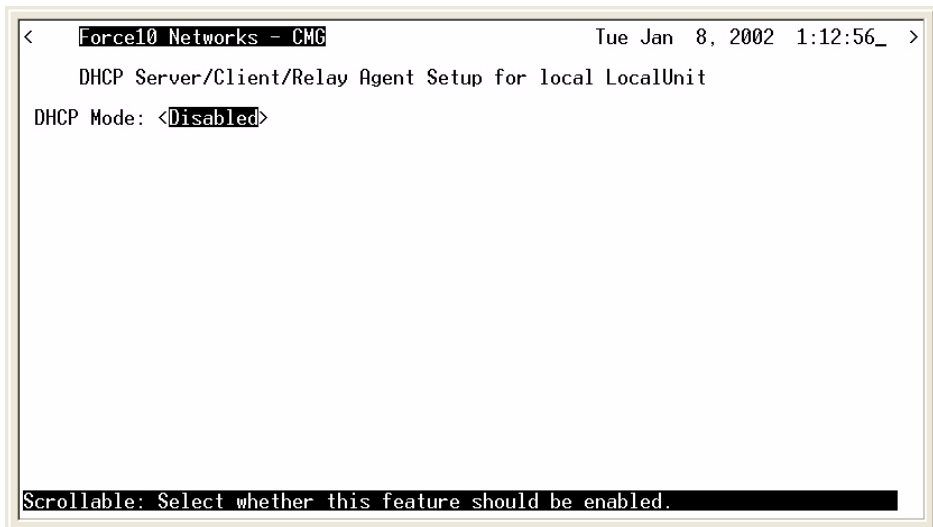
Setup: <DHCP Server/Client/Relay> -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
```

Profile Directory:Local Profile

DHCP Server/Client/Relay

4. DHCP Mode: <**Disabled**>, <**Server**>, <**Client**> or <**Relay**>. Opens the DHCP Setup window for the following:

**DHCP
Mode:
Disabled**



DHCP Mode: <Server>

**DHCP
Mode:
Server**

< Force10 Networks - CMG

Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:15:38_ >

DHCP Server/Client/Relay Agent Setup for local LocalUnit

DHCP Mode: <Server> Info:<Active Leases>

Domain Name: (TestDomainName)

Start IP Address:(0.0.0.0) Number:(0) Lease Duration:(000:00)hr:min

Domain Name Servers

(0.0.0.0)

(0.0.0.0)

(0.0.0.0)

(0.0.0.0)

Option Type Value

(0)

(0)

(0)

(0)

NetBIOS over TCP/IP

Node Type: (0) Scope: ()

Name Servers (NBNS): (0.0.0.0) (0.0.0.0)

Scrollable: Select whether this feature should be enabled.

Info: <Active Leases>

Displays the Active Lease Information below.

Domain Name

This option is used if the DHCP Server is enabled on the DHCP Server/Client/Relay screen. On a LAN network where the Router is the DHCP Server, the **Domain Name** will be assigned with IP addressing information to DHCP clients. This value is a maximum of 41 characters.

Start IP Address

If the Router is specified to act as a DHCP server, enter the first valid IP Address the Router may assign to a DHCP client. This field acts in conjunction with the **Number** field.

Number

Enter the number of IP Addresses that this unit may assign. This field acts in conjunction with the **Start IP Address** field by using a contiguous block of IP Addresses. Number range is 1 through 254.

Lease Duration

Enter the duration, in hours and minutes, that an IP Address assigned by the Router will remain valid. If this field is left at 000.00, the IP Address will remain valid indefinitely.

Domain Name Servers

The **Domain Name Servers** option specifies the IP address of DNS name servers to be used by DHCP clients. Enter the IP address of up to 4 domain name servers.

Option Type Value

These fields add the optional DHCP server attributes that will be advertised every time a DHCP client discovery is initiated. This provisioning takes effect immediately and can only be performed when the DHCP server is enabled. Once the option number is entered the other fields become active.

Option

Range is 1-254. Options tags are unique, duplicate numbers will be rejected. 0 = off
Reserved numbers = 6, 15, 44, 46, 47, 50, 51, 53, 54 and 61. The operator will be notified when exiting this window, that a Reserved or Duplicate Option number has been used, and will direct you to modify the option number.

Type/Value

<**Bool**> - Boolean uses <true> <false>

<**1Byte**> <**2Byte**> <**3Byte**> <**4Byte**> - sends a value in 1, 2, 3 or 4 bytes.

<**IP**> - IP Address in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is a number from 0 to 255.

<**TEXT**> - String with a maximum of 50 characters, enclosed in quotes.

NetBIOS over TCP/IP

Node Type

This option allows NetBIOS over TCP/IP clients, which are configurable to be configured as described in RFC 1001/1002. The value is specified as a single octet that identifies the client type (1=B-node, 2=P-node, 4=M-node, 8=H-node).

Scope

The Scope is a DHCP option that represents a grouping of computers on a subnet using the same NetBIOS name. This name has a maximum of 41 characters.

Name Server (NBNS)

This option specifies a list of RFC 1001/1002 NBNS name servers listed in order of preference. Enter the IP address of the NBNS servers.

DHCP Mode: <Relay>

The DHCP Relay will forward the DHCP/BootP requests to the defined address of the remote unit selected.

**DHCP
Mode:
Relay**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:18:30_ >
DHCP Server/Client/Relay Agent Setup for local LocalUnit
DHCP Mode: <Relay >
Forward DHCP/BOOTP Requests to: {192.168.1.120 }
                                {0.0.0.0 }
                                at <RemoteUnit >

Scrollable: Select the remote on which the DHCP Server resides.
```

Forward DHCP/BOOTP Requests to:

1. At the **(0.0.0.0)** field, enter the IP address of the remote unit, and select **[ENTER]** or **[TAB]**. The next field will appear.
2. At the **at < >** field, select the remote unit (scroll through the list), and select **[ENTER]** or **[TAB]**.
3. A second IP address can be entered, in the same manner on the second line.
4. Press **[ESC]** to save changes and return to the Local (LAN) Profile Setup window.

Profile Directory:Local Profile

DHCP Server/Client/Relay

DHCP Mode: <Client>

DHCP Mode: Client

Force10 Networks - CMG

Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:24:40_ >

DHCP Server/Client/Relay Agent Setup for local LocalUnit

DHCP Mode: <Client> <Renew> Automatic DNS: <Enabled>

Set Tx Packets Broadcast Bit: [X]

Request	Description	Current Lease Value
[X]	IP Address / Mask	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
[X]	Gateway	0.0.0.0
[]	DNS Host Name	
[X]	DNS Domain Name	
[X]	DNS Primary Server	0.0.0.0
[X]	DNS Secondary Server	0.0.0.0
	Client ID	01 00:E0:97:6B:59:16
	Lease Time hr:min:sec	No Lease
	Server ID	0.0.0.0
	Server IP	0.0.0.0
	Relay Agent	0.0.0.0
	Current Status	Status: Not Enabled
	Quarantined	None

Scrollable: Select whether this feature should be enabled.

<Renew/Release>:

This option will force a lease to be renewed or released.

<Renew> - The card will perform a typical lease renewal sequence based on its current DHCP configurables.

<Release> - If valid IP based leases exist and the DHCP Client interface is up, a release message will be sent to the server. Then the Lease Contents will be cleared and all configurable settings will be left at their last value. The DHCP Client will acquire a new lease when the user sends a renew command.

Automatic DNS:

<Disabled> - No automatic enabling/disabling of the DNS Resolver will occur and the enable/disable setting of the DNS Resolver will be under manual configuration control.

<Enabled> - The DNS Resolver management will be managed automatically by the Client based on completeness of DNS configurables to operate the DNS Resolver.

Set Tx Packets Broadcast Bit:

Use this parameter to indicate if the broadcast bit is to be set (checked box) or clear in the bootp flags header value for all transmitted DHCP/BOOTP packets for the DHCP Client.

Request:

The following DHCP Client configurables can be requested (check box) from a DHCP Server.

IP Address/Mask	DNS Host Name	DNS Primary Server
Gateway	DNS Domain Name	DNS Secondary Server

Description:

This column will display the current Client information items.

Current Lease Value:

This column will display the current Lease information for the items under the Client Description list.

LAN Collision Threshold

Use the options on this window to define the sample interval for data collection of collisions, the Hi and Lo thresholds for raising and clearing Collision alarms. It will also display if there is a current alarm active and the number of collisions that have occurred during the defined sample interval.

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the Main menu, select **[ENTER]**.
2. Select **LAN < Setup ->** and select **[ENTER]**.

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE <Setup -> <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

3. Select **Setup: <LAN Collision Threshold >**. If this option is not displayed, scroll to the selection with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].

Local Profile Window



```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:30:11_ >
Profile Setup for (LocalUnit ), LOCAL

Protocol 802.2 Eth II SNAP 802.3 LAN Network Updates
IP X X X X <Neither >
IPX [X] [X] [X] [X] <Neither >
Other [X] [X] [X]

LAN IP LAN IPX
IP Address: (10.0.0.1 ) 802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0 ) Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
Default Router:(0.0.0.0 ) SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <LAN Collision Threshold > -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
  
```

LAN Collision Threshold Provisioning

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:31:19_ >
LAN Collision Threshold Provisioning Setup for local LocalUnit

Lan: DWN Collisions: 0 Alarm: NO

Sample Interval: (10 )
Collision Hi Threshold: (5000 )
Collision Lo Threshold: (10 )

Collision Sample Interval 1-65535 seconds, 0 is Disable, Default is 10
  
```

LAN Collision Threshold Fields

LAN

Will indicate if the LAN is UP or Down (DWN).

Collisions

The number of collisions that have occurred during the defined sample interval.

Alarm

This field indicates if there is/is not an active collision alarm.

Sample Interval

Use the Collision Sample Interval in seconds. Range is 0-65536 seconds, default is 10 and 0 = disable.

Collision Hi Threshold

Use this field to set the number of collisions in Interval to raise an alarm. When the number of collisions rises above the defined number per interval, the alarm will be activated. The default is 500.

Collision Lo Threshold

Use this field to set the number of collisions in Interval to Clear Alarm. If the number of collisions drops below the defined number per interval, the alarm will clear. Default is 10.

Spanning Tree

NOTE: This option does not display on the **Local LAN Profile Setup**, until Spanning Tree is enabled on the **Router CARD Profile**.

The Spanning Tree configures the setup for the Spanning Tree Algorithm.

To Configure Spanning Tree:

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the Main menu, and [ENTER].
2. Select **LAN < Setup ->** and select [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

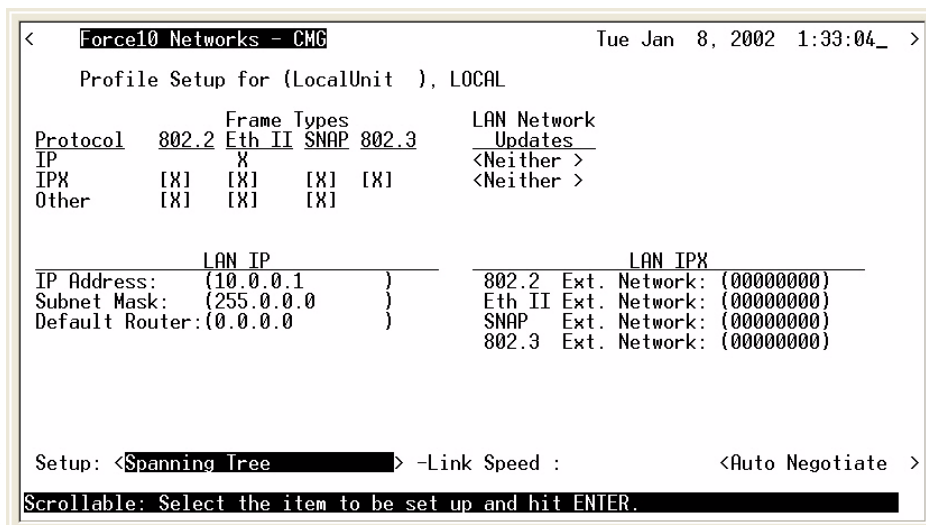
Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE  <Setup ->      <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Spanning Tree

3. Select Setup: <Spanning Tree > and select [ENTER].



< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:33:04_ >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit), LOCAL

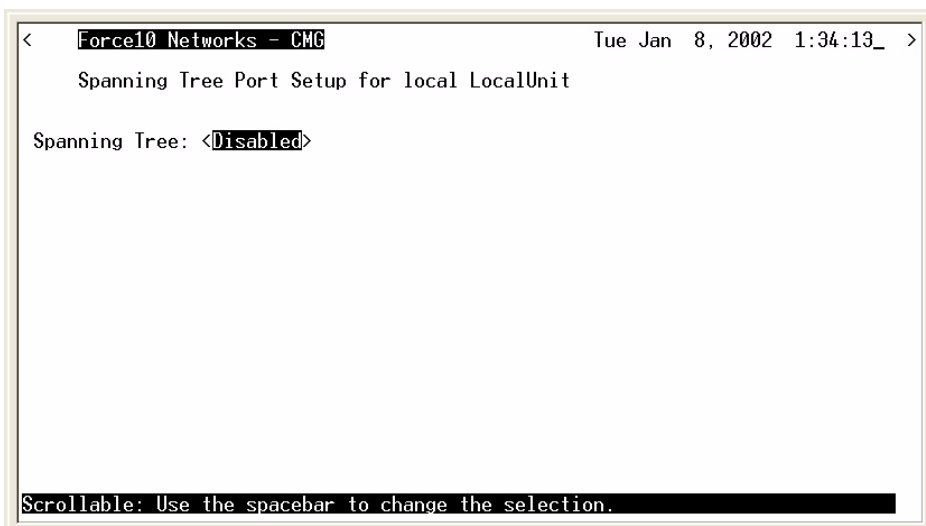
Protocol	802.2	Frame Types	Eth II	SNAP	802.3	LAN Network
IP			X			Updates
IPX	[X]	[X]	[X]	[X]		<Neither >
Other	[X]	[X]	[X]			<Neither >

	LAN IP			LAN IPX
IP Address:	(10.0.0.1	)		802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Subnet Mask:	(255.0.0.0	)		Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
Default Router:	(0.0.0.0	)		SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
				802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Spanning Tree > -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

4. To enable Spanning Tree, scroll <Disabled> to <Enabled>, with the [SPACEBAR], select [ENTER].



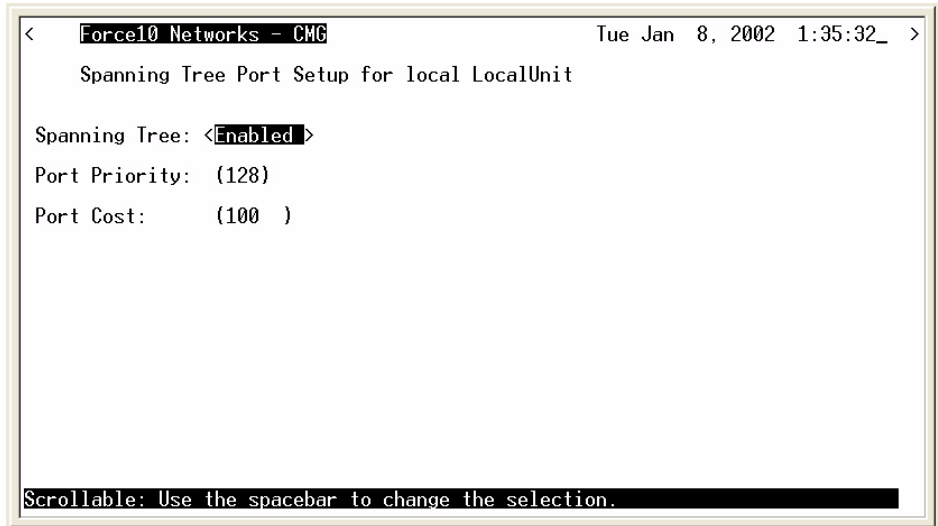
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:34:13_ >

Spanning Tree Port Setup for local LocalUnit

Spanning Tree: <Disabled>

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

5. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:35:32_ >
Spanning Tree Port Setup for local LocalUnit

Spanning Tree: <Enabled>
Port Priority:  (128)
Port Cost:      (100 )

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

Spanning Tree Fields

Port Priority

The Port Priority value can range from 0 to 255, with a default of 128.

Port Cost

The Port Priority value can range from 0 to 65535, with a default of 651.

Secondary IP Address

This option will add a secondary IP address and subnet to the specified LAN interface. The router will then be capable of routing between the various subnets on the LAN interface or between any of the LAN subnets and any WAN subnet. A maximum of 8 secondary IP addresses can be added to the LAN interface.

To Add a Secondary IP Address:

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the Main menu, and [ENTER].
2. Select **LAN < Setup ->** and select [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE  <Setup ->  <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

3. Select **Setup: <Secondary IP Address>**, by scrolling through the options with the [SPACEBAR] and select [ENTER]. Select [CTRL A] to enter an IP Address.

**Local
Profile
Window**

Force10 Networks - CMG

Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:37:07_ >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit), LOCAL

Protocol	802.2	Eth II	SNAP	802.3	LAN Network Updates
IP		X			<Neither >
IPX	[X]	[X]	[X]	[X]	<Neither >
Other	[X]	[X]	[X]		

	LAN IP		LAN IPX
IP Address:	(10.0.0.1)		802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)
Subnet Mask:	(255.0.0.0)		Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)
Default Router:	(0.0.0.0)		SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)
			802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Secondary IP Addresses > -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate >

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

Force10 Networks - CMG

Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:38:20_ >

Secondary IP Address Setup for local LocalUnit

	IP Address	Subnet Mask
1.	(0.0.0.0)	(0.0.0.0)

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase

Editable: Enter a non-zero IP Address/Subnet Mask in Dotted Decimal Notation.

Secondary IP Address Fields

IP Address

The secondary IP Address, in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is between 1 - 255.

Subnet Mask

The Subnet Mask to the corresponding Secondary IP address listed, in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is between 1 - 255.

Link Speed

The Link Speed sets the Ethernet PHY mode and speed for the Router.

NOTE: It is highly recommended that this setting be left at auto-negotiation. Connection ethernet devices with incompatible settings can lead to severe performance degradation and errors on a network.

To Set the Link Speed:

1. Select **Configuration** <**Profile Directory**> from the Main menu, select [ENTER].
2. Select **LAN** <**Setup** -> and select [ENTER].

**Profile
Directory
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Sat Jan 5, 2002 0:23:08_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD           <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN           NONE/NONE <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN       NONE/NONE <Setup -> <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for this profile.
```

Profile Directory:Local Profile

Link Speed

3. Select **Link Speed: <Auto Negotiate>**. All options are available by scrolling with the [SPACEBAR]. Once the selection has been made, select [ENTER] to set the configuration.

Local Profile Window

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Tue Jan 8, 2002 1:40:53_ >

Profile Setup for (LocalUnit), LOCAL

Protocol	802.2	Eth II	SNAP	802.3	LAN Network Updates
IP		X			<Neither >
IPX	[X]	[X]	[X]	[X]	<Neither >
Other	[X]	[X]	[X]		

LAN IP

IP Address: (10.0.0.1)

Subnet Mask: (255.0.0.0)

Default Router:(0.0.0.0)

LAN IPX

802.2 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Eth II Ext. Network: (00000000)

SNAP Ext. Network: (00000000)

802.3 Ext. Network: (00000000)

Setup: <Secondary IP Addresses > -Link Speed : <Auto Negotiate>

Scrollable: Select LAN Link Speed Discovery Method

Link Speed Fields

Auto Negotiate

This selection is the default and is highly recommended to be left at this setting. The router and the device will negotiate common features and functions.

100T Full Duplex

The selection will force the ethernet PHY to 100 MHz full-duplex on the Router.

100T Half Duplex

The selection will force the ethernet PHY to 100 MHz half-duplex on the Router.

10T Full Duplex

The selection will force the ethernet PHY to 10 MHz full-duplex on the Router.

10T Half Duplex

The selection will force the ethernet PHY to 10 MHz half-duplex on the Router.

CHAPTER 5

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

In this Chapter

- Remote (WAN) Profile Overview
- Security/Options
- Static/VPN Networks
- Static NAT Addresses
- NAT Bypass Subnets
- Static Addresses
- Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)
- Filter Network/Server
- Spanning Tree
- Trunk Port

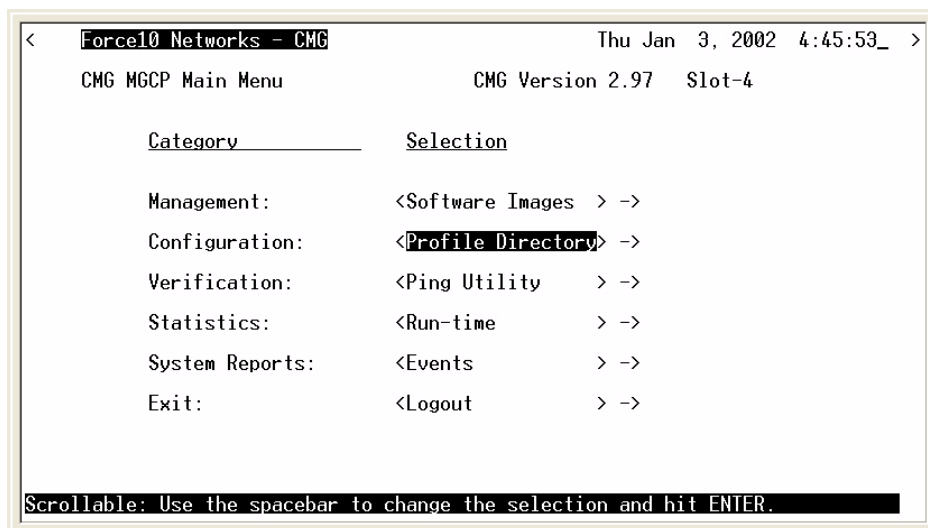
Remote (WAN) Profile Overview

The fields on the Remote (WAN) Profile Setup window allow you to define how and when data transmission will occur with a specific remote device. This includes defining the protocol(s) that it will use to send and receive data, defining security information, static networks and WAN lines. The local unit will depend on this information to determine communication guidelines with remote sites.

The Remote (WAN) profile can support up to 30 remote profiles.

The Remote (WAN) profile complements the Local (LAN) profile. The remote profiles identify which remote devices the local unit can communicate with by defining the data transmission requirements of each remote device. The local profile defines the local unit's transmission requirements and may appear as a remote profile in each remote unit's profile directory. It is important to understand that the information contained in the remote profile determines how the local and remote units establish communication.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted, and press [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:45:53_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

Category Selection
Management: <Software Images > ->
Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
Verification: <Ping Utility > ->
Statistics: <Run-time > ->
System Reports: <Events > ->
Exit: <Logout > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press **[ENTER]**.

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD           NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN            NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE  <Setup ->    <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.
```

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Remote (WAN) Profile Overview

3. Configure the WAN on this Main window. There are additional windows for specific features (see the following sections). **Note:** The Remote Profile Window will change as options are selected. The graphic below displays the window at its default settings.

Remote Profile Window

The screenshot shows the 'Force10 Networks - CMG' window with the title bar 'Force10 Networks - CMG' and a timestamp 'Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:31:12_'. The main content is 'Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)'. It features a table with columns 'Protocol', 'Mode', 'WAN Network Updates', and 'GRE Tunnel'. The rows are 'IP' (Route, Never, Disabled), 'IPX' (Blocked, Never, Disabled), and 'Other' (Blocked, Never, Disabled). Below the table, 'NAT Gateway: <Disabled>' is shown. A 'WAN IP' section has 'Numbered: <NO >'. 'FW Allow Frags' is set to '<Disabled>'. 'Setup: <Security/Options > ->' and 'Setup: <Trunk Port > ->' are at the bottom. A red bar at the bottom contains the text 'Editable: Please enter a value.'

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >	<Never >	<Disabled >
Other	<Blocked >	<Never >	<Disabled >

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP
Numbered: <NO >

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Security/Options > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

Editable: Please enter a value.

The graphic below displays how the window changes with the NAT Gateway enabled.

This screenshot is similar to the previous one but with 'NAT Gateway: <Enabled>' and 'NAT Port Numbers: <Dynamic >'. 'NAT Address: <Assigned by Remote>' is also present. A red rectangle highlights these three lines. The 'WAN IP' section remains 'Numbered: <NO >'.

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >	<Never >	<Disabled >
Other	<Blocked >	<Never >	<Disabled >

NAT Gateway: <Enabled> NAT Port Numbers: <Dynamic >
NAT Address: <Assigned by Remote>

WAN IP
Numbered: <NO >

Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)

This is an 11 character maximum field to uniquely identify this remote device. This value identifies the remote system's name on the remote unit's Local (LAN) Profile Setup window. All remote devices will initially have the default name "RemoteUnit". To change the name of the remote device, simply type over the existing name.

This name will be used during the authentication process to ensure this unit's identity. Please note that the system is case and spacing sensitive.

Transmission Options

The following fields are always displayed on the Remote Profile setup window. By selecting options on this chart, other fields are displayed or removed.

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >		
Other	<Blocked >		

Protocol

This field displays three protocol options, **IP**, **IPX** and **Other**. Use the Mode, **WAN Network Updates**, and **GRE Tunnel** fields to determine how and if the listed protocols will be used. This screen will change dramatically as different modes are selected.

Mode

This field works in conjunction with the Protocol field, above, and defines which protocol(s) the Router will use to send and receive data when communicating with this remote device.

Protocol	Route	Blocked	Bridge	Optimize
IP	X	X	X	
IPX		X	X	X
Other		X	X	

<Route> - When used in conjunction with the **LAN Network Updates** (Local Profile window) and **WAN Network Updates** setting (below), the **<Route>** values enable the Router to use Force10 Networks' network optimization feature, which ensures that only necessary data is transmitted over the WAN connection. The Router will initiate IP and IPX learning mode. With each of these selections the Router will initiate learning mode to gain knowledge of local and remote networks and services. Once it knows of remote networks and services, it can advertise the information on the local LAN on behalf of the remote networks and servers.

<Bridge> - will not prompt the Router to initiate WAN bandwidth optimization. **Note that the unit will not advertise servers and networks.**

<Blocked> - if you do not wish to use the corresponding protocol.

<Optimize> - See **<Route>** above

WAN Network Updates

Routing information updates across the WAN will occur based on this selection. This field is only available when IP (Protocol) is set to **<Route>** or when IPX (Protocol) is set to **<Optimize>**. This field should be set to **<Never>** if the **NAT Gateway** field, below, is set to **<Enabled>**.

<Never> To prohibit all routing information updates. When this is selected, static routes between the Router and the remote units must be configured.

<Periodic> Periodic updates across the WAN occur every 30 seconds for the IP protocol and every 60 seconds for IPX.

<Triggered> Triggered updates occur only when changes within the network are detected. This is the recommended setting.

GRE Tunnel

Use this field to define IP Tunneling for GRE (Generic Route Encapsulation). If enabled, define the local and remote IP Tunnel Addresses, as well as the Secured GRE Tunneled Data. This field is only available if the IP protocol is set to **<Route>**.

<All> Tunnel all packets on this interface to the tunnel destination address.

<By Network> Tunnel packets based on their destination address by matching GRE network entries.

NOTE: If the IP protocol is set to **<By Network>**, establish the remote address in the Static Networks window.

<Disabled> Disable GRE tunneling.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Remote (WAN) Profile Overview

NAT Gateway

Enable NAT Gateway for this Router to translate addresses from all of its local devices to a specific IP Address (typically assigned by an Internet Service Provider). This will allow the remote device to dynamically assign a single IP Address to the Router or to configure a specific IP Address, which in turn will be used by all devices on that network.

<Enabled> with GRE Tunnel <Disabled>

The screenshot shows the 'Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)' window in the Force10 Networks - CMG interface. The window title is 'Force10 Networks - CMG' and the date/time is 'Tue Jan 8, 2002 22:22:51_'. The settings are as follows:

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route>	<Never>	<Disabled>
IPX	<Blocked>		
Other	<Blocked>		

Below the table, the NAT Gateway is set to <Enabled> and NAT Port Numbers are set to <Dynamic>. The NAT Address is set to <Assigned by Remote>.

NAT Port Numbers: Port numbers are associated with applications that run on the workstation. The NAT Gateway may translate the socket, or combination of IP Address and TCP port number.

<Dynamic> IP Address and the port number will be translated.

<Preserved> NAT Gateway will only translate the IP Address. This should only be set to **<Preserved>** if an application you are using requires a specific port number.

NAT Address: Use this field to define the IP Address for the Local (LAN) tunneling or NAT Gateway device.

<Assigned by Remote>

<Configured> with Configured selected the following fields are displayed:

Address: Enter the Local IP Tunnel Address/Subnet Mask. If you are only GRE Tunneling, this will probably be your local IP Address in the Local Profile. If the address is dynamically assigned, the local unit will receive an IP Address from this remote device.

Number of NAT Addresses: With a setting of NAT addresses to greater than 1 you a pool of public addresses is created from which the NAT translation will draw. Range is between 1-255.

<Enabled> with GRE Tunnel <By Network>

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 0:22:11_ >
Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit )

Protocol  Mode      WAN Network
         Updates
IP        <Route  >  <Never  >
IPX       <Blocked >
Other     <Blocked >

GRE Tunnel
<By Network>

NAT Gateway: <Enabled> NAT Port Numbers: <Dynamic  >
NAT and Local IP Tunnel Address: <Assigned by Remote>

WAN IP
Numbered:  <NO  >

FW Allow Frags  <Disabled>
Setup: <Security/Options  > -> Setup: <Trunk Port  > ->
Scrollable: Select whether this feature should be enabled.
```

NAT Port Numbers: See previous page.

NAT and Local IP Tunnel Address: Use this field to define the IP Address for the Local (LAN) tunneling or NAT Gateway device.

<Configured> See previous page.

<Assigned by Remote>

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Remote (WAN) Profile Overview

<Enabled> with GRE Tunnel <All>

IP Protocol VPN Setup - > window will display.

This field displays only when **GRE Tunnel** is set to **<All>**. To open the setup window select **IP Protocol VPN Setup** - > and select **[ENTER]**

The top screenshot shows the 'Force10 Networks - CMG' configuration window. The title bar indicates the date and time: 'Wed Jan 9, 2002 0:27:28_'. The main content area is titled 'Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)'. It contains a table with the following data:

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<All >
IPX	<Blocked >		
Other	<Blocked >		

Below the table, there is a section titled 'IP Protocol VPN Setup ->' with the following values:

- NAT Gateway: <Enabled >
- NAT Port Numbers: <Dynamic >
- NAT and Local IP Tunnel Address: <Assigned by Remote>

The bottom screenshot shows the 'Force10 Networks - CMG' configuration window. The title bar indicates the date and time: 'Wed Jan 9, 2002 0:29:32_'. The main content area is titled 'VPN Setup for remote RemoteUnit'. It contains the following fields:

- Tunnel Name: ()
- Remote IP Tunnel Address: (0.0.0.0)

Tunnel Name

Enter Tunnel name, up to 11 characters.

Remote IP Tunnel Address

Enter IP Tunnel Address.

WAN IP

This field is used to enable the Router to assign an IP Address to the remote device that this remote profile is attached to.

< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 0:32:45_ >

Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >		
Other	<Blocked >		

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP	
Numbered:	<YES>
IP Address:	(0.0.0.0)
Subnet Mask:	(0.0.0.0)

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Security/Options > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

Numbered

Designate if the local unit will have an IP Address assigned to the WAN when communicating with this remote unit. If the remote unit is an Adit router, it is recommended that the WAN remain unnumbered, thus conserving IP Addresses. This field displays if the **IP Mode** field is set to <Route>.

IP Address: This address is used to uniquely identify the Router on the network. Use this field to assign an IP Address to the WAN.

Subnet Mask: A subnet mask determines which bits in the IP address are used to identify the network number. It is also a method of extending the IP Network Address so that a site may use one network address for several different networks.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Remote (WAN) Profile Overview

Default Router

Use this field to identify a router that is physically connected to your LAN. If the Router receives a packet destined to a network that is not known, the packet will be sent to the router identified in this field. This field is only displayed if the **IP Mode** field is set to **<Bridge>**.

< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 0:35:50_ >

Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Bridge>		
IPX	<Blocked>		
Other	<Blocked>		

WAN IP

Default Router: (0.0.0.0)

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Security/Options > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

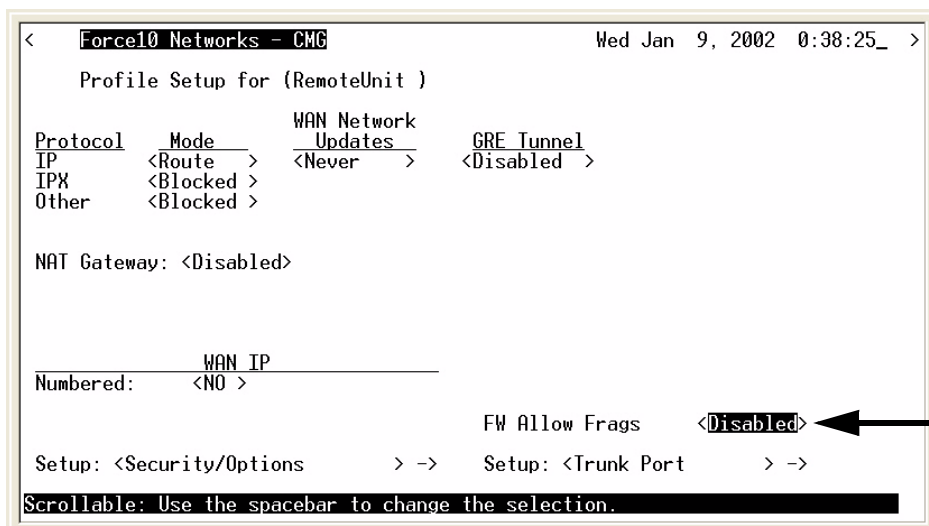
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

FW Allow Frags

Use this field to allow fragmented packets to pass through the firewall to accommodate devices that send reverse-ordered or out-of-ordered packets. It is recommended that this field be left at **Disabled** since this is a security risk.

<Enabled> Enables the passage of fragmented packets.

<Disabled> Disables the passage of fragmented packets. (Default).



< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 0:38:25_ >

Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >		
Other	<Blocked >		

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

Numbered: WAN IP <NO >

FW Allow Frags <Disabled> ←

Setup: <Security/Options > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Remote (WAN) Profile Overview

Setup < > (bottom of the Remote main window)

Remote Profile Window

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >		
Other	<Blocked >		

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP
Numbered: <NO >

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Security/Options > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

Editable: Please enter a value.

The Setup field has the following options. Use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll through the selections.

<Security/Options >

Use this option to access the Remote (WAN) Security/Options Setup window. The fields on this window may be used to configure the remote security parameters and options such as compression. See “*Security/Options*” on page 5-16, for more information.

<Static/VPN Networks >

Use this option to access the Static/VPN Networks window. These windows can be used to configure static network routes for the remote device. See “*Static/VPN Networks*” on page 5-19, for more information.

<Static NAT Addresses >

Use this option to access the Static NAT Addresses window which allows the operator to configure static bi-directional NAT mappings between local server addresses and public addresses. See “*Static NAT Addresses*” on page 5-27, for more information.

<NAT Bypass Subnets >

Use this option to access the Static NAT Addresses window which allows the operator to configure static bi-directional NAT mappings between local server addresses and public addresses. See “*Static NAT Addresses*” on page 5-27, for more information.

<Static Addresses >

This option is used to access the Static Addresses window which allows the operator to configure static addresses for the remote unit. See “*NAT Bypass Subnets*” on page 5-30, for more information.

<Firewall Filters >

This option is used to access the Firewall Rules screen which allows the operator to establish firewall filters for this remote unit. See “*Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)*” on page 5-36, for more information.

<Filter Network/Server >

This option is used to access the Filter Network/Server screen which allows the operator to establish network and server filtering for this remote unit. See “*Filter Network/Server*” on page 5-43, for more information.

<Spanning Tree>

Configures the global setup for using the Spanning Tree Algorithm as specified in the IEEE 802.1D specification. See “*Spanning Tree*” on page 5-48, for more information.

<Trunk Port>

Configures the Router Remote trunks. See “*Trunk Port*” on page 5-51 for more information.

Security/Options

The purpose of this window is to define security information and miscellaneous options pertaining to this Router. The security portion of this window allows the setup of password or secret (depending on the chosen security protocol) that this remote device will use during the authentication process. Also the setup of authentication on the LAN of the local unit or a specified security server.

Authentication is a security process whereby the transmitting and receiving devices determine which security protocol to use during data transmission, as well as establish confirmation identity. This authentication process must match between the receiving and transmitting devices prior to actual data transmission, if the process fails, the link is terminated. The protocol used by the remote unit to authenticate the local unit and vice versa is defined in the LAN Profile.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted, and press [ENTER].
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.
Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE  <Setup ->  <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.
```

3. Tab down to **Setup:<Security/Options>** Scroll through the list of options with the [SPACEBAR] and select [ENTER].

**Remote
Profile
Window**



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 3:12:53 >
Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit )

Protocol      Mode      WAN Network      GRE Tunnel
IP            <Route >    <Never >         <Disabled >
IPX          <Blocked >
Other        <Blocked >

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP
Numbered:    <NO >

FW Allow Frags    <Disabled>

Setup: <Security/Options > ->  Setup: <Trunk Port > ->
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
```

4. The following **Security/Options setup** window will display.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 3:15:02 >
Security/Options Setup for remote RemoteUnit

Authentication by remote:
  User ID:  Local Profile Name      LocalUnit

Authentication of remote: Protocol: NONE
  User ID: <Remote Profile Name> RemoteUnit
  Security Server: <Local >

Compression: <Disabled> Typical Data: <Easy to Compress>

Scrollable: Select User ID received from this remote unit.
```

Security/Options Fields

Authentication By Remote

User ID: Local Profile Name

This field displays the User ID of the local unit.

Authentication of Remote

This fields defines the parameters the remote unit expects to receive from this local unit.

Protocol

This field displays the authentication protocol, if any, to be used by remote units when authenticating the local unit. The authentication protocol is defined on the Local (LAN) Security/SNMP window.

User ID

<Remote Profile Name> Displays the current Remote Profile name

<Remote Custom Name> User-defined name, up to 32 characters. This user ID is sent during the authentication process.

Security Server

Displays the defined method as to where the remote device will be authenticated. This option is set in the **Router CARD Setup - > Security/SNMP** window.

Compression

<Enabled> Will negotiate compression with a remote device.

<Disabled> If the remote device will not negotiate compression, leave at **<Disabled>**.

Typical Data

This allows the data compression to be customized to the type of data on a given network.

<Easy to Compress>. If typical compression ratios are greater than 2/1, then this setting should achieve the best compression. This is the default.

<Hard to Compress> If compression ratios are less than 2/1.

Static/VPN Networks

Static networks allow you to establish fixed, or pre-determined routes, which increases the control that you have over routing choices within your network. Although Adit routers are able to dynamically learn routing information through RIP packets, you may wish to disable this feature and manually enter fixed routes. Disable Learning by selecting the **<Never>** option in the **WAN Network Updates** field on the Remote (WAN) Profile Setup window. Static routing may be preferred if:

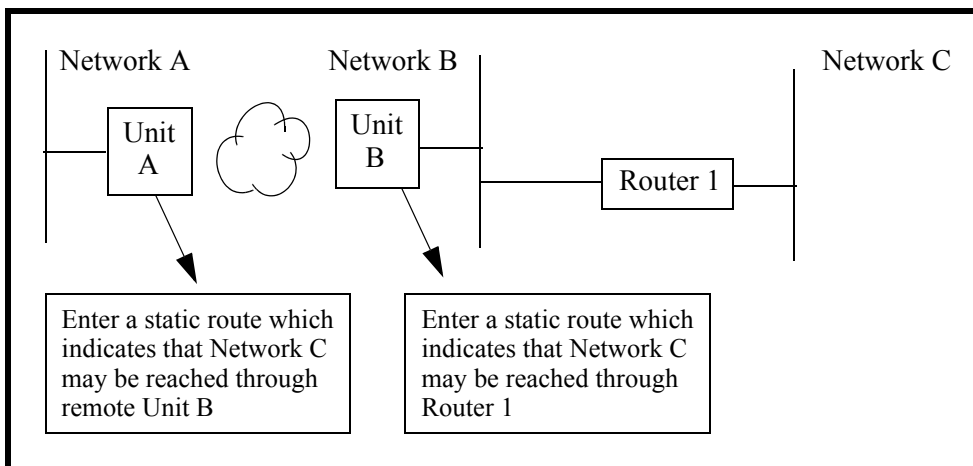
- Routers that are not configured to advertise, cannot utilize the automatic learning capabilities of the Router
- Advertising is disabled for security purposes
- Keeping routing tables small in order to increase LAN/WAN performance
- Advertising is disabled to decrease traffic on the LAN and across the WAN

Static routing may also be preferable when managing large networks. Often times it is easier to disable the learning mode and manually enter routes, rather than review each routing table entry and determine its advertising status.

As a static routing example, let's assume that we have three networks, A, B and C. Network B, is connected to Network C via a router, and to Network A via a remote router. Network B may not learn of Network A's existence if advertising was disabled on Router 1. Therefore, if you wish to establish an entry in the routing table indicating a route between Network B and Network C, you can define a static route on Network B.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Static/VPN Networks



To continue with this example, if Network B is not configured to advertise Network C to Network A, then Network A will not dynamically learn of Network C's existence. If you wish to establish a route on Network A to Network C, you must define a static route on Network A that indicates that Network C may be accessed through remote Router B.

To set up a static route, you must define the following routing information:

- The address of the network you wish to reach;
- How far away from the local LAN the network is located (in terms of metric measurement or hops, depending on the protocol)
- Whether the network can be reached on the local LAN (via the LAN port) or through a remote unit.

If you are using the local LAN, you will also need to define the address (either IP or MAC, depending on the protocol) of the first gateway (i.e. router) you will use to reach the network you are defining.

It is important to note that if the static network is reached via a Remote Unit (WAN), it must be defined by choosing the **SETUP: <Static Networks>** option on the corresponding Remote (WAN) Profile Setup window. Static networks that are reached via the local LAN must be defined by choosing the **SETUP <Static Networks>** option on the Local (LAN) Profile Setup window.

NOTE: All static routes are considered filters and will be applied toward the maximum allowable number of 500 filters.

Depending on the GRE Tunnel field setting, the Static/VPN Networks window display fields are modified. The following displays two options.

GRE Tunnel set to <All>

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted, and press [ENTER].
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN           NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN       NONE/NONE  <Setup ->    <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.
```

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Static/VPN Networks

3. Set **GRE Tunnel** to <All >.
4. Select **Setup: <Static/VPN Networks>**, scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to through the options and select [ENTER].

**Remote
Profile
Window**

< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 3:29:36_ >

Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<All >
IPX	<Blocked >		
Other	<Blocked >		

IP Protocol VPN Setup ->
NAT Gateway: <Disabled>
Local IP Tunnel Address: <Assigned by Remote>

WAN IP
Numbered: <NO >

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Static/VPN Networks > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

5. Select [CTRL A] to add a Static IP Network. Enter Network Address, Subnet Mask and Metric value.

**Static/
VPN
Networks
Window**

< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 3:33:39_ >

RemoteUnit has 1 Static IP Network.

Setup Static: <IP Networks >

Network	Subnet Mask	Metric
1. (0.0.0.0)	(0.0.0.0)	(1)

Static/VPN Networks Fields

Setup Static

<IP Networks> Enter the Subnet IP Address. Note: The host bits should all be zero.

Network

Enter the Subnet IP Address. Note: The host bits should all be zero.

Subnet Mask

Enter the Subnet Mask of the Network IP Address.

Metric

Enter the distance, in hops, to the network. Value must be between 1-15.

GRE Tunnel set to <By Network>

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the **Main Menu**, and press **[ENTER]**.
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the **RemoteUnit** line and press **[ENTER]**.

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type Recv/Send Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE <Setup -> <Enabled >

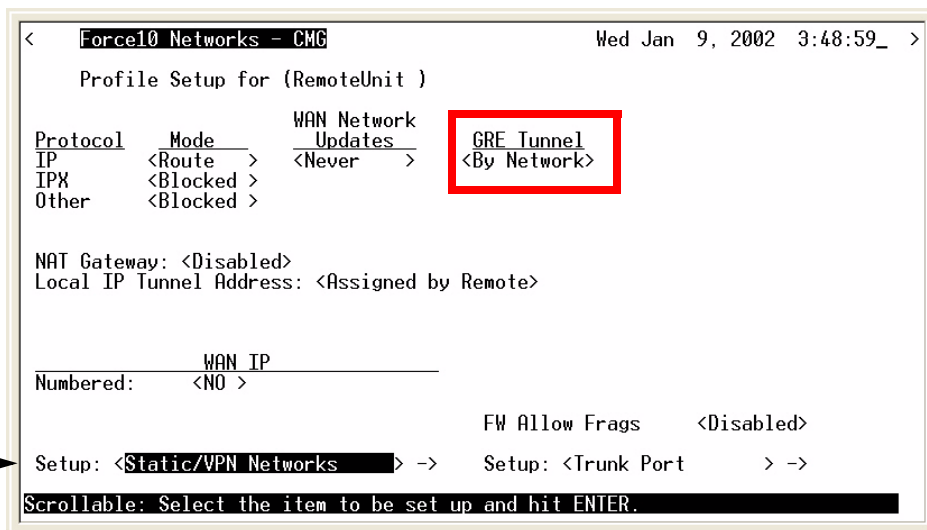
CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.
```

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Static/VPN Networks

3. Set **GRE Tunnel** to **<By Network>**.
4. Select **Setup: <Static/VPN Networks>**, scroll with the **[SPACEBAR]** to through the options and select **[ENTER]**.

**Remote
Profile
Window**



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp "Wed Jan 9, 2002 3:48:59_". The window displays the "Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)". A table lists network protocols and their modes: IP is <Route>, IPX is <Blocked>, and Other is <Blocked>. The WAN Network Updates are set to <Never>. The GRE Tunnel is highlighted with a red box and set to <By Network>. Below the table, NAT Gateway is <Disabled> and Local IP Tunnel Address is <Assigned by Remote>. A section for WAN IP configuration shows "Numbered:" set to <NO>. Further down, "FW Allow Frags" is <Disabled>. The "Setup:" line shows "<Static/VPN Networks> ->" and "Setup: <Trunk Port> ->". At the bottom, a scrollable instruction reads: "Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER."

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route>	<Never>	<By Network>
IPX	<Blocked>		
Other	<Blocked>		

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>
Local IP Tunnel Address: <Assigned by Remote>

WAN IP
Numbered: <NO>

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Static/VPN Networks> -> Setup: <Trunk Port> ->

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

5. Press [**CTRL A**] to add a Static IP Network. Enter Network Address, Subnet Mask and Metric value. Note: this window displays additional fields depending on the field setting for GRE Tunnel (on the Remote Profile window).

**Static/
VPN
Networks
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 3:52:48_ >
RemoteUnit has 1 Static IP Network.
Setup Static: <IP Networks >
      Network      Subnet Mask      Metric      VPN Features
      GRE Tunnel  Encrypt
1. (0.0.0.0) (0.0.0.0) (1) VPN ->

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Editable: Enter a non-zero IP Address/Subnet Mask in Dotted Decimal Notation.
```

Static/VPN Networks Fields

Setup Static

<**IP Networks**> Enter the Subnet IP Address. Note: The host bits should all be zero.

Network

Enter the Subnet IP Address. Note: The host bits should all be zero.

Subnet Mask

Enter the Subnet Mask of the Network IP Address.

Metric

Enter the distance, in hops, to the network. Value must be between 1-15.

VPN Features

GRE Tunnel

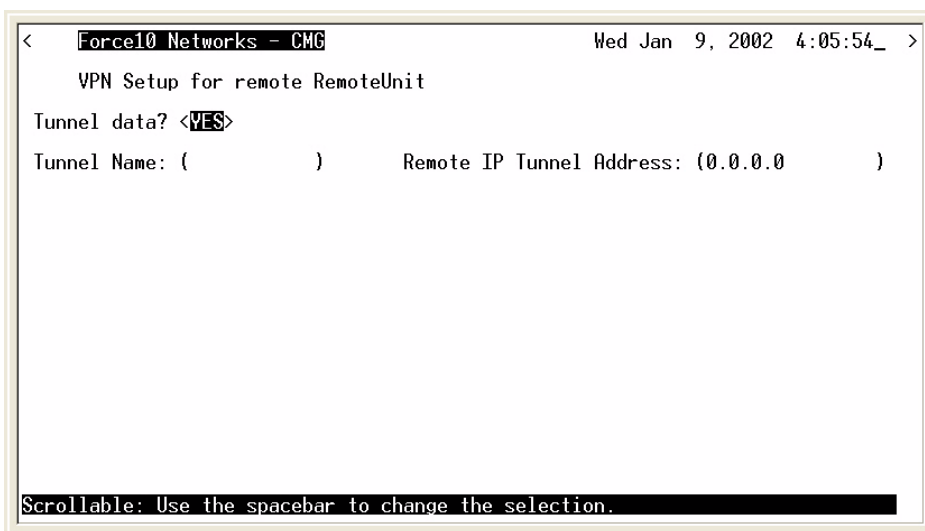
Displays the Tunnel Name defined on the VPN setup window.

Encrypt

Not supported in this release.

VPN - >

Opens the VPN Setup window.



Tunnel Data ?

<Yes> - Enables tunnel. Displays additional fields to setup.

<No> - Disables tunnel.

Tunnel Name

Enter a Tunnel Name, up to 11 characters.

Remote IP Tunnel Address

Enter an IP address of the Remote IP Tunnel.

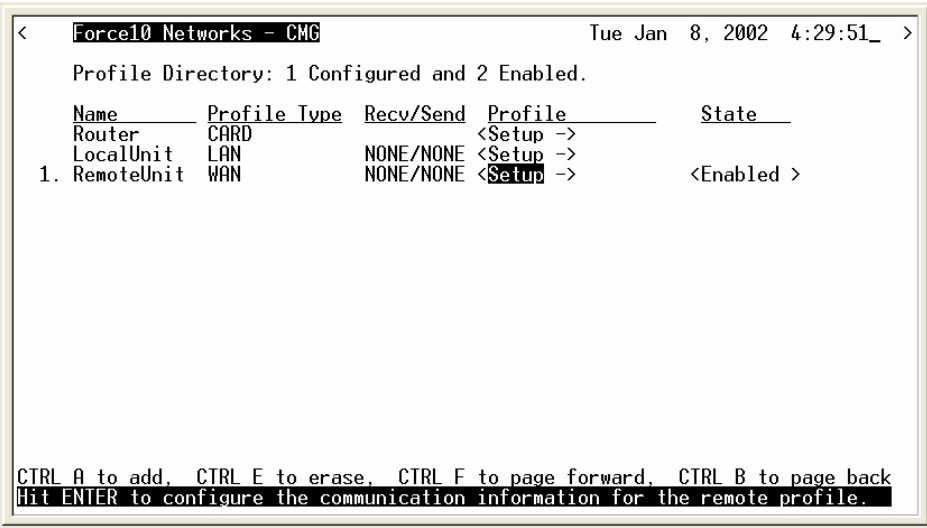
Static NAT Addresses

Use this window to configure Static Bi-directional NAT mappings between local server addresses and public addresses.

NOTE: Up to 16 Static NAT addresses can be configured. Each Static NAT address filter will count toward the maximum number of 500 filters.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted.
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN           NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN       NONE/NONE  <Setup ->  <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.
```

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Static NAT Addresses

3. Select **Setup: <Static NAT Addresses>**, scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to select this option and select [ENTER].

**Remote
Profile
Window**

< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 23:32:08 >

Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >		
Other	<Blocked >		

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP

Numbered: <NO >

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Static NAT Addresses > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

4. Select [CTRL A] to add a Static NAT Address.

**Static
Addresses
Window**

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Wed Jan 9, 2002 23:33:50_ >

RemoteUnit has 1 Static NAT Address List.

	Local IP Address	NAT IP Address	TypePort	Local Port	NAT Port
1.	(0.0.0.0)	(0.0.0.0)	<ALL>		

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase

Editable: Enter a non-zero IP Address/Subnet Mask in Dotted Decimal Notation.

Local IP Address

Enter the IP Address of the local device.

NAT IP Address

Enter the NAT IP Address of the desired device.

TypePort

<ALL> - Selects all port types.

<UDP> - Selects UDP port types.

Local Port - Enter a local port. Range = 1-65535.

NAT Port - Enter a NAT port. Range = 1-65535.

<TCP> - Selects TCP port types.

Local Port - Enter a local port. Range = 1-65535.

NAT Port - Enter a NAT port. Range = 1-65535.

NAT Bypass Subnets

Use this window to define NAT Bypass Subnets which will create a list of source addresses that will not be subject to NAT translation when passing through a NAT enabled WAN interface.

1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the **Main Menu**, and press **[ENTER]**.
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the **RemoteUnit** line and press **[ENTER]**.

Profile Directory Window

< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >

Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name	Profile Type	Recv/Send	Profile	State
Router	CARD		<Setup ->	
LocalUnit	LAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	
1. RemoteUnit	WAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	<Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.

3. Select **Setup: < NAT Bypass Subnets>**, scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to select this option and select [ENTER].

NAT Bypass Subnets Window



```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 23:38:22_ >
Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit )

Protocol      Mode      WAN Network  GRE Tunnel
IP            <Route  >  <Never  >   <Disabled >
IPX          <Blocked >
Other        <Blocked >

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP
Numbered:    <NO >

FW Allow Frags    <Disabled>

Setup: <NAT Bypass Subnets > ->  Setup: <Trunk Port > ->
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
  
```

4. Press [CTRL A] to add a NAT Bypass.

NAT Bypass Setup Window

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 23:39:43 >
RemoteUnit has 1 NAT ByPass Record.

Network      Subnet Mask
1.           (0.0.0.0 ) (0.0.0.0 )
  
```

Network

An IP address or host to bypass the NAT Translation, in the form of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is between 0-255.

Subnet Mask

Subnet mask of the Network IP address above, in the form of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is between 0-255.

Static Addresses

Use this screen to define static addresses that are based on the Ethernet MAC or IP Address of a specific device on the local LAN. Typically, the Router would learn of these devices by monitoring LAN/WAN packets. By defining a static address, you are telling the Router the location of the corresponding device before the Router learns where this device resides. Static addresses are typically used in a bridging situation.

Use the Local (LAN) Profile to define static addresses for devices that are located on the LAN. If you wish to establish static addresses for devices on remote LAN's, access this screen using the corresponding Remote (WAN) Profile.

NOTE: Each static address filter will count toward the maximum number of 500 filters.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted.
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >

Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name	Profile Type	Recv/Send	Profile	State
Router	CARD		<Setup ->	
LocalUnit	LAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	
1. RemoteUnit	WAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	<Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.

3. Select **Setup: <Static Addresses>**, scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to select this option and select [ENTER].

**Remote
Profile
Window**



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 23:45:13_ >
Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit )

Protocol      Mode      WAN Network  GRE Tunnel
Updates
IP            <Route  >  <Never  >  <Disabled >
IPX          <Blocked >
Other        <Blocked >

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP
Numbered:    <NO >

FW Allow Frags    <Disabled>

Setup: <Static Addresses > ->  Setup: <Trunk Port    > ->
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
```

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Static Addresses

4. Scroll through the list of options with the [SPACEBAR] to select **Setup Static: <MAC Address>** or **Setup Static: <IP Address>**. Press [CTRL A] to add a Static Address.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 23:52:40_ >
RemoteUnit has 1 Static MAC Address Record.
Setup Static: <MAC Address ->
  Device Name  MAC Address
1.  ( ) (00-00-00-00-00-00)

CTRL A to add
Editable: Ent
```

**Static
Addresses
Window
(MAC
Address)**

**Static
Addresses
Window
(IP
Address)**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Wed Jan 9, 2002 23:53:50_ >
RemoteUnit has 1 Static IP Address Record.
Setup Static: <IP Address ->
  Device Name  IP Address
1.  ( ) (0.0.0.0 )

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Editable: Enter a name for the filter.
```

Static Addresses Fields

Setup Static

<**IP Address**> - To setup a static IP address.

<**MAC Address**> - To setup a static MAC address.

Device Name

A user-defined name of the LAN device that is associated with this static address. Up to 7 characters is allowed for this field.

MAC Address

Enter the MAC Address of the desired device. If the static address is configured through the Local (LAN) Profile Setup screen, the device can be reached via the local LAN. If the static address is configured on a specific Remote (WAN) Profile screen, the device can be reached via that specific remote. This field is only available if the **Setup Static** field is set to <**MAC Address**>.

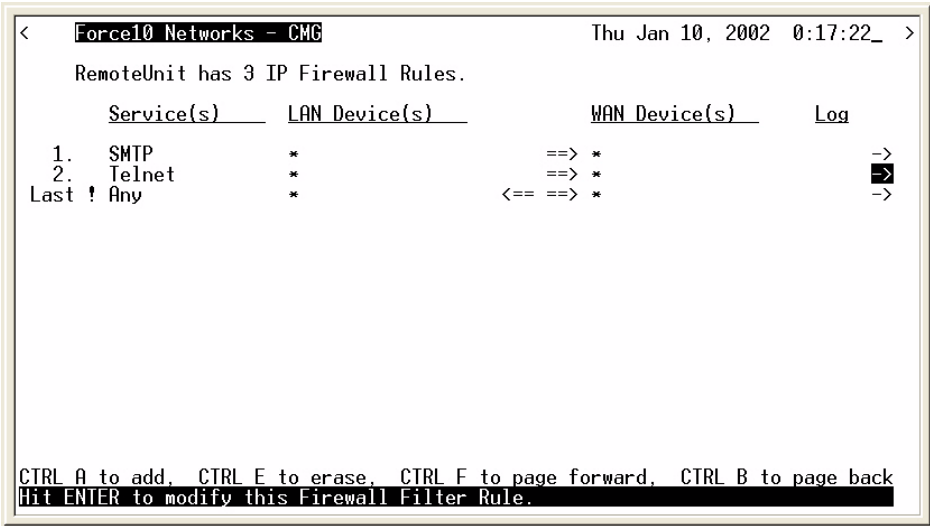
IP Address

Enter the IP Address of the desired device. If the static address is configured through the Local Profile Setup screen, the device can be reached via the local LAN. If the static address is configured on a specific Remote (WAN) Profile screen, the device can be reached via that specific remote. This field is only available if the **Setup Static** field is set to <**IP Address**>.

Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)

A firewall is a method for keeping a network secure from intruders, by using filters to block the transmission of certain types of traffic (services). Once created, firewalls are a security feature that allow only certain types of services to pass in and/or out of your LAN. Firewalls can be created on a per remote profile basis. Each filter consists of a set of drop/pass rules that are applied in the order in which they appear on the list — in other words, rule 1 is applied before rule 2 and so on. This set of rules constitutes a filter for a specific remote profile and will be applied to that profile's incoming traffic, outgoing traffic, or both traffic types (service flows).

**Firewall
Rules
Window**



Symbol	Description
#	Rule Number
!	Pass (no! (blank) indicates Drop)
Services(s)	Lists current service defined
LAN Device(s)	Lists LAN defined for this rule (* indicates any)
==>	Outgoing
<==	Incoming

Profile Directory: Remote Profile

Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)

<== ==>	Outgoing and incoming
WAN Device(s)	Lists WAN defined for this rule (* indicates any)
Log	X = Logged in the Event or Alarm log

To Add a Firewall Filter:

WARNING! THE ADDITION OF THE FIRST FIREWALL RULE WILL AUTOMATICALLY SECURE THE UNIT AGAINST ACCESS VIA TELNET (UNLESS THE FIRST RULE EXPRESSLY PERMITS TELNET). TO ENSURE THE ABILITY TO TELNET INTO THE UNIT BY AT LEAST ONE REMOTE DEVICE, YOU MUST CREATE A RULE INDICATING WHICH DEVICE HAS TELNET ACCESS.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted, and press [ENTER].
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE  <Setup ->  <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.
```

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)

3. Tab down to **Setup: <Security/Options>** and scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to **<Firewall Filters>**. Press [ENTER].

**Remote
Profile
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:06:17_ >
Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit )

Protocol  Mode      WAN Network  GRE Tunnel
IP        <Route >    <Never >     <Disabled >
IPX       <Blocked >
Other     <Blocked >

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP
Numbered:  <NO >

FW Allow Frags  <Disabled>

Setup: <Firewall Filters > ->  Setup: <Trunk Port > ->
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
```

4. Select [CTRL A] to add an IP Firewall Rule.

**Firewall
Filters
Window**

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:08:46_ >
RemoteUnit has 0 IP Firewall Rules.

Service(s)  LAN Device(s)  WAN Device(s)  Log

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
There are no items configured.
```

5. Enter the parameters of the rule, select [ESC] to close the window and save the configuration. See below for a description of all fields for the Firewall Setup window.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:13:15_ >
IP Firewall Setup for remote RemoteUnit
Rule Number: (1)
Action: <Pass>
Service: <SMTP >
Service Establishment: <Outgoing>
Local IP Address/Network: (* )
Remote IP Address/Network: (* )
< > Packets which match this rule

Editable: Enter the position for this rule.
```

Firewall Filters Fields

Rule Number

The rule number defines the order in which the rules are applied. Once there are two or more rules created, the rule number can be changed to put them in the desired order. The **Last!** rule displayed is automatically set after the first rule is defined, and states that the Router should drop any service (incoming or outgoing) that has not been addressed in the proceeding rules.

Action: (Pass/Drop)

This column indicates the service(s) that will <Pass> or <Drop> from the local network to the remote network and vice versa. On the Firewall Filters window the following indicate Pass/ Drop:

! in this column = Drop Blank column = Pass

Typically, rules are established with the **Pass** action, since the last rule (which is automatically defined by the software) **Drops** all services not expressly permitted by the previous rule(s). For

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)

example, if you wish to deny all transmissions except Telnet, you would create a rule indicating that Telnet has the **Pass** action. The Router software would create the last rule that states the unit should **Drop** all other services.

Since any service that is not expressly permitted to pass will be prohibited, it is important that you thoroughly understand the security policies of your WAN before attempting to create a firewall. We suggest that only experienced Network Administrators create and maintain firewall filters. Incorrectly defined filters may compromise the security and functionality of your WAN.

Service

This field displays the service that this particular rule affects. The most common services have been pre-defined however, there are a select few options where you may further define the service to be filtered.

Name	Description
Finger	Display information about users
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
Gopher	Document search and retrieval
HTTP	World Wide Web
ICMP	Internet Control Message Type <Equal> or <Range> = Specify a number or range. Number = 0-65535 Start Number = 0-65535 End Number = 0-65535
NUM	IP protocol number to be specified, see <i>"Protocol Number in Firewall Filters"</i> on page B-2 for a list of these Protocols and the assigned number. Protocol Number = number between 1-255
NNTP	Network News Transfer
Ping	ICMP echo request/reply
POP3	Post Office Protocol Version 3
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol Port <Equal> or <Range> = Specify a number or range. Number = 0-65535 Start Number = 0-65535 End Number = 0-65535

Telnet	User interface to remote unit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
WAIS	Wide Area Information Services

Service Establishment

Use this field to establish the transmission direction that will be affected by this rule.

- Incoming** All session establishments coming from the remote which match the value in the Service field, will adhere to the value in the Action field.
- Outgoing** All transmissions outbound from the LAN toward this remote which match the value in the Service field, will adhere to the value in the Action field.
- In/Out** Will affect both incoming and outgoing transmissions.

Local IP Address/Network

IP Address of the local device or network that this rule will affect. If you enter the address of a local device, this rule will affect only the session establishments of the local device and the destination address entered in the **Remote IP Address/Network** field, below. If this rule is to affect “any” local devices/networks, leave this field with an asterisk default symbol *.

Significant Bits

Use this field to identify the number of bits, from left to right that will be used to match the IP Address field within the data packet with the value entered into the **Local IP Address/Network**. Range is between 1-32.

Remote IP Address/Network

Enter the IP Address of the remote device or network that this rule will affect. If you enter the address of a remote device, this rule will affect only the session establishments of the remote device and the device/network address entered in the **Local IP Address/Network** field, above. If this rule is to affect “any” remote devices/networks, leave this field at the default symbol *.

Significant Bits

Use this field to identify the number of bits, from left to right, that will be used to match the IP Address field within the data packet with the value entered into the **Remote IP Address/Network**. Range is between 1 to 32.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)

< > Packets which match this rule

Use this field to indicate whether a rule match should trigger an Alarm or Log entry.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| (Blank) | A transmission match will not trigger an Alarm or Events log entry. |
| Alarm | A transmission match will trigger an Alarm entry. |
| Log | A transmission match will trigger an Events log entry. |

Log or Alarm entries may also be useful when a specific security issue is at stake. For example, if your security policy does not permit Telnetting, you may wish to keep track of all Telnet attempts. As a general rule, however, we do not recommend keeping a log of all rule matches since this may impact system performance and may cause an Event or Alarm screen overflow.

NOTE: When enabled, a single event/alarm will be logged for all TCP session initiations. An event/alarm will be logged for each packet for all UDP transfers. UDP traffic should typically not be allowed across a firewall.

NOTE: All firewall rules are considered filters and will be applied toward the maximum allowable number of 500 filters.

Filter Network/Server

This screen allows you to filter the Remote (WAN) networks/servers in two ways, depending on which mode is selected. The **<Filter>** mode causes the unit to learn all networks/services on known networks, and then advertise these services to the LAN.

In the **<Learn>** mode the unit will disable or restrict learning of networks/services. Under this mode, services will only be learned if they are selected or added. For example, when you enter the current screen, all known networks/services will be displayed, since the **<Filter>** mode is the default mode. If you wish to restrict which services are learned you may change the **Selected Items** field to **<Learn>** and then enable only selected services displayed on the screen. Once you exit this screen and save the changes, only those services that you enabled and/or added will be learned and displayed.

Since the **<Filter>** mode learns all services, it may be most appropriate for smaller networks. The **<Learn>** mode however, may be best for larger networks since it allows you to restrict which types of services are learned.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted, and press [ENTER].
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile      State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE  <Setup ->    <Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.
```

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Filter Network/Server

3. Tab down to **Setup: <Security/Options>** and scroll with the [SPACEBAR] to **<Filter Network/Server>**. Press [ENTER].

**Remote
Profile
Window**

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:20:42_ >

Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit)

Protocol	Mode	WAN Network Updates	GRE Tunnel
IP	<Route >	<Never >	<Disabled >
IPX	<Blocked >	<Never >	<Disabled >
Other	<Blocked >	<Never >	<Disabled >

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

WAN IP

Numbered: <NO >

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Filter Network/Server > -> Setup: <Trunk Port > ->

Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.

4. Select with the [SPACEBAR] **<IP Networks>**, **<IPX Networks>** or **<IPX Servers>**. [TAB] to the **Selected Items** field.

**Filter
Network
/Server**

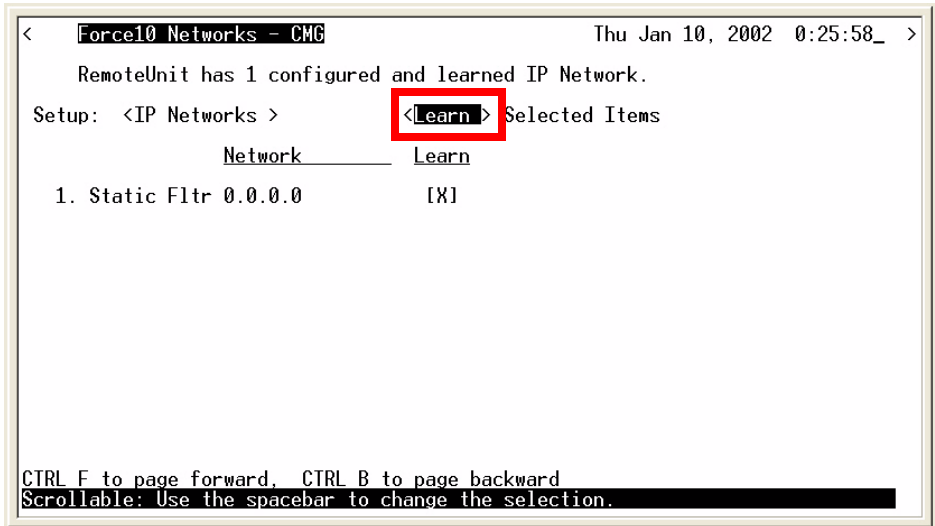
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:23:03_ >

RemoteUnit has 1 configured and learned IP Network.

Setup: <IP Networks > <Filter> Selected Items

Network	Filter
1. Static Fltr 0.0.0.0	[]

5. Select **<Learn>** or **<Filter>** and select **[ENTER]**.



6. To manually configure a service, see “*Static/VPN Networks*” on page 5-19.

Filter Network/Server Fields

Setup

Use this field to identify which networks or server types you wish to review and filter.

<IP Networks>, **<IPX Networks>** or **<IPX Servers>**

Selected Items (Filter/Learn)

<Filter> (default) The Router will learn all networks/servers and advertise them to the LAN. This mode is particularly useful for small networks with few items to be learned/advertised. Customize the advertised networks/servers in one of two ways; **<Learn>** or **[CTRL A]**

<Learn> Under this mode, learning and advertising are disabled until a specific server type is selected from the displayed servers or is manually added. The **<Learn>** mode is much better suited for larger networks, as specifying which networks/servers you wish the Router to learn may consume less filters than specifying which networks/servers you **Do Not** want learned.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Filter Network/Server

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:34:52_ >

RemoteUnit has 2 configured and learned IP Networks.

Setup: <IP Networks > <Learn> Selected Items

	Network	Learn
1. Static Fltr	0.0.0.0	[X]
2. Static Fltr	192.168.1.0	[X]

CTRL F to page forward. CTRL B to page backward
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

If the server type and name are specified, only servers that match both values will be learned or filtered. Be aware that the **Name** value is case and spacing sensitive.

Network

This field displays the network address of each service/network learned from the remote unit. If this route was added using the **Static Network** screen, “Static Fltr” will appear before the network address of this entry.

Type

This field is only available when the **Setup** field is set to <IPX Servers>. The **Type** field displays the Hex value assigned to each known server. When a service is added using [CTRL A], a Hex value must be defined. If you wish to learn or filter certain services that match a particular server type, manually add an entry specifying the desired Hex value. This setting will enable the unit to learn or filter all services that match the specified service type. This field may be used in conjunction with the **Name** field, described below. Range 1-FFFF.

Name

This field displays the first 11 characters of the name of each known network/server. If a server is manually added and a server name is not defined, all servers matching the added type will be learned and the first 11 characters of their names will be displayed. If both the server name and type are defined when the server is manually added then only servers matching both criteria will be learned.

Filter []

This field will change depending on the value set in the **Selected Items** field. Use the **[SPACEBAR]** to place and **X** in this field to choose that the Router will **Filter** the chosen network or server.

Learn []

This field will change depending on the value set in the **Selected Items** field. Use the **[SPACEBAR]** to place and **X** in this field to choose that the Router will **Learn** the chosen network or server.

Spanning Tree

NOTE: This option displays only when **Spanning Tree** is **<Enabled>** on the Router CARD Profile AND the **Remote Profile Mode** is set to **<Bridge>**.

The Spanning Tree configures the setup for the Spanning Tree Algorithm. To Configure Spanning Tree:

- 1. Select **Configuration <Profile Directory>** from the Main menu, and **[ENTER]**.
- 2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** and select **[ENTER]**.

Profile
Directory
Window

< Force10 Networks - CMG

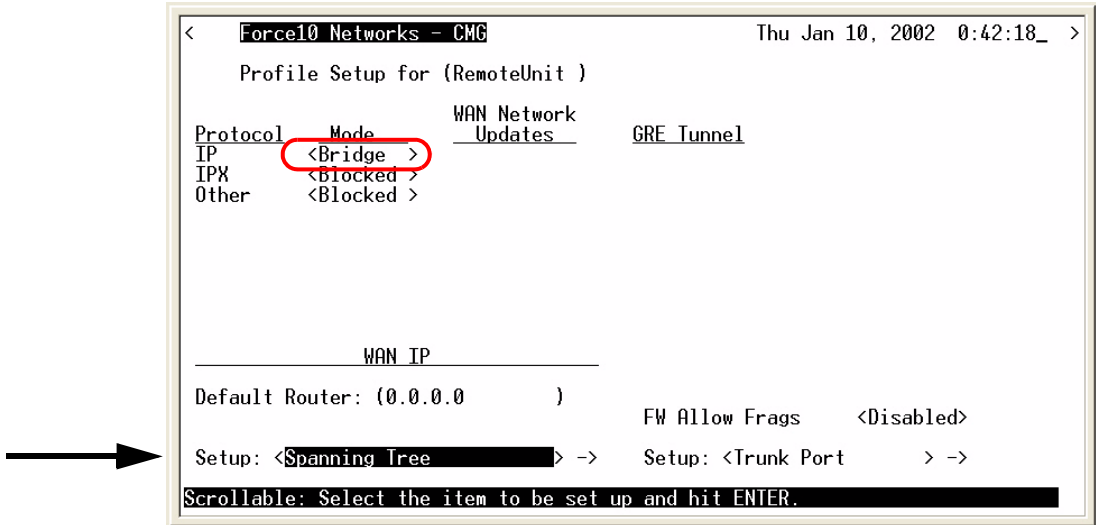
Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >

Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

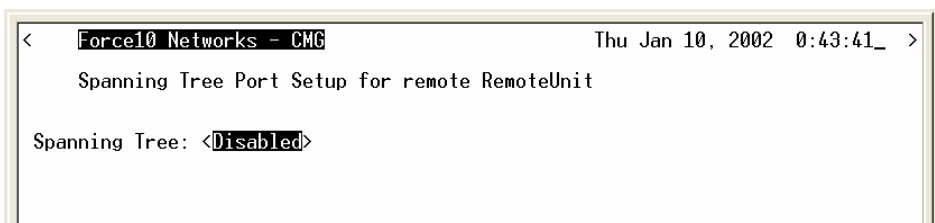
Name	Profile Type	Recv/Send	Profile	State
Router	CARD		<Setup ->	
LocalUnit	LAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	
1. RemoteUnit	WAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	<Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.

3. Select **Setup: <Spanning Tree >** and select **[ENTER]**..



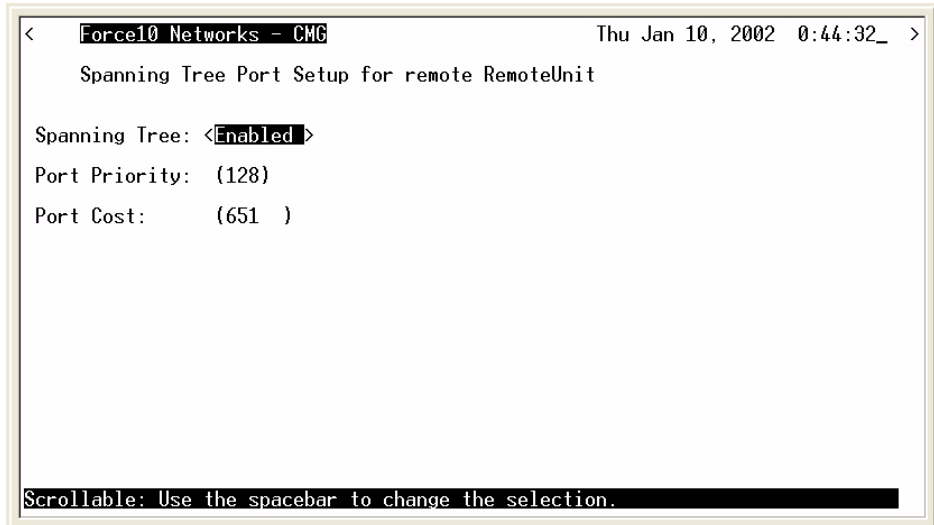
4. To enable Spanning Tree, scroll **<Disabled>** to **<Enabled>**, with the **[SPACEBAR]**, select **[ENTER]**.



Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Spanning Tree

5. Enter the appropriate data in the following fields.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp "Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:44:32_". The main heading is "Spanning Tree Port Setup for remote RemoteUnit". The configuration details are as follows:

- Spanning Tree: ☒ Enabled
- Port Priority: (128)
- Port Cost: (651)

At the bottom, a scrollable message states: "Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection."

Port Priority

The Port Priority value can range from 0 to 255, with a default of 128.

Port Cost

The Port Priority value can range from 0 to 65535, with a default of 651.

Trunk Port

Use this screen to define the Router Interface.

1. On the **Main Menu**, press [TAB] until **Configuration <Profile Directory>** is highlighted.
2. Select **WAN <Setup ->** on the RemoteUnit line and press [ENTER].

Profile Directory Window

< Force10 Networks - CMG
Tue Jan 8, 2002 4:29:51_ >

Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name	Profile Type	Recv/Send	Profile	State
Router	CARD		<Setup ->	
LocalUnit	LAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	
1. RemoteUnit	WAN	NONE/NONE	<Setup ->	<Enabled >

CTRL A to add, CTRL E to erase, CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page back
 Hit ENTER to configure the communication information for the remote profile.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Trunk Port

3. Select Setup:<Trunk Port> and select [ENTER].

Remote Profile Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 0:50:04_ >
Profile Setup for (RemoteUnit )

Protocol      Mode      WAN Network
              <Route >  Updates
IP            <Blocked >
IPX           <Blocked >
Other         <Blocked >

NAT Gateway: <Disabled>

Numbered:      WAN IP
               <NO >

FW Allow Frags <Disabled>

Setup: <Security/Options > -> Setup: <Trunk Port >
Scrollable: Select the item to be set up and hit ENTER.
```

WAN Port Setup Window

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 1:38:12 >
WAN Port Setup for remote RemoteUnit

Connection  WAN Connection Type  DLCI
Select WAN Port Number : <3>A:1:11  PPP

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

Wan Port Number

Select the WAN Port Number by scrolling through the options in the < > brackets.
Note: Only WANs that are set up will display here. As the selections scroll through the WAN numbers, the connection ID will be modified to reflect this selection.
WAN Connection Types: **MLPPP**, **PPP**, **PPP in Frame Relay**, or **Frame Relay 1490**.

DLCI

The Data Link Connection Identifier range is 16-1022.
Note: this field is not applicable with all connection types.

ML QOS Interleaving

This field appears when the WAN selected is WAN Connection Type: **MLPPP**. When enabled, prioritized IP flows will use PPP transmission instead of MLPPP.

ML Fragment Threshold

This field appears when the WAN selected is WAN Connection Type: **MLPPP**. The MultiLink Fragment Threshold is the size at which non-prioritized packets will be inspected to determine if they should be fragmented. Range 320-1600, with a default of 1600.

WAN Port Setup Window with MLPPP

<

Force10 Networks - CMG

Thu Jan 10, 2002 1:42:20_ >

WAN Port Setup for remote RemoteUnit

	Connection	WAN Connection Type	DLCI
Select WAN Port Number :	<ML1>	MLPPP	
ML QOS Interleaving :	<Disabled>		
ML Fragment Threshold :	(1600)		

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

Profile Directory:Remote Profile

Trunk Port

CHAPTER 6

Basic Configuration

In this Chapter

- Overview
- Start Basic Configuration
- Local Unit Identification
- Routing Protocol/Security
- WAN Interface Connections
- Remote Unit Profile
- SNMP Configuration
- Setup Complete

Basic Configuration

Overview

Overview

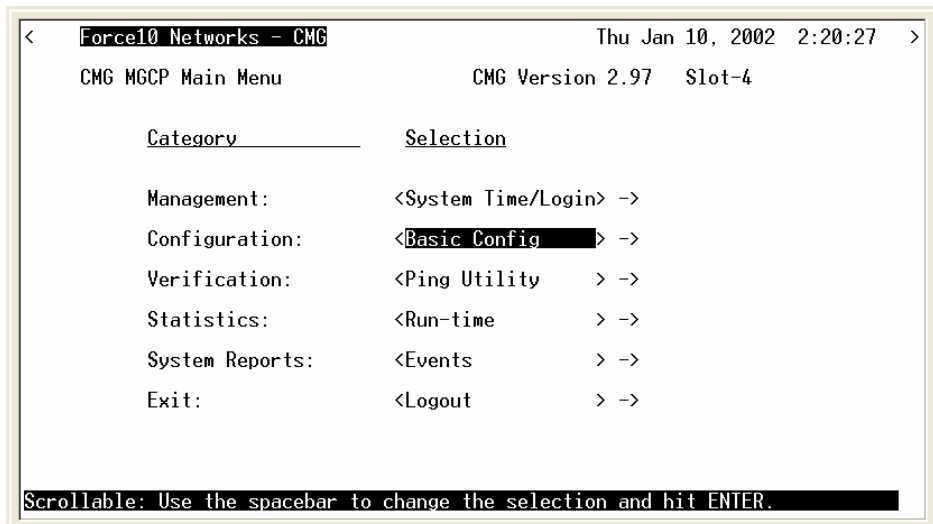
The Basic Configuration is designed to walk the user through all the Basic Setup to operate the Router effectively. This feature can be used at any time, to initially setup the Router, or to change the configuration of the Router. As setup information is entered and the Enter button is selected, the next setup item will appear.

[ESC] will exit this setup program at any time.

[ENTER] will move to the next page or enter the information into the system.

Start Basic Configuration

1. Select **Configuration: <Basic Config>** -> from the Router Main menu and select [ENTER].



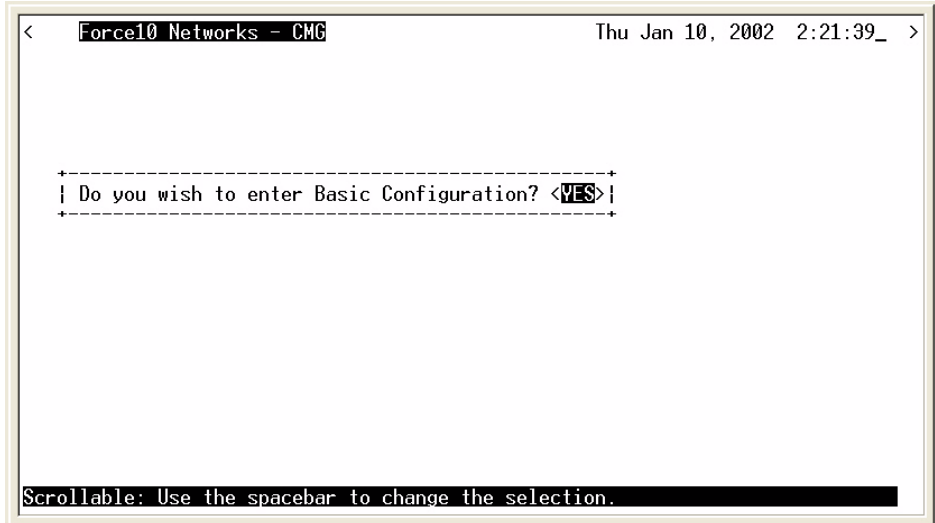
```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:20:27 >
CMG MGCP Main Menu          CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

  Category                Selection

Management:              <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration:           <Basic Config> ->
Verification:            <Ping Utility> > ->
Statistics:              <Run-time> > ->
System Reports:          <Events> > ->
Exit:                   <Logout> > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

2. Select <Yes> to enter the setup program and select [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:21:39_ >

+-----+
| Do you wish to enter Basic Configuration? <YES> |
+-----+

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

Basic Configuration

Local Unit Identification

Local Unit Identification

NOTE: When this window is opened the items below in the box are not displayed. As you fill in information or accept the current (default) information (by hitting [ENTER]) the next line will display. This is the same process that you will find on all of the windows in the Guide.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:23:51_ >
-----
For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 1 of 7

Welcome to the CMG Basic Configuration.

Please enter a name which will uniquely identify this CMG in
your network. It is suggested that the name of your location be used.

CMG Name:          (LocalUnit )

Please enter the IP Address of this CMG:  (10.0.0.1 )
Please enter the Subnet Mask of this CMG:  (255.0.0.0 )
Please enter the Default Router of this CMG: (0.0.0.0 )

ENTER to go to next field, ESC to exit Basic Configuration
Editable: Enter a non-zero IP Address/Subnet Mask in Dotted Decimal Notation.
```

Page Fields

CMG Name: (LocalUnit)

Enter a unique name for this unit. Name can be up to 11 characters.

IP Address of this CMG

Enter the IP Address of the Router.

Subnet Mask of this CMG

Enter the Subnet Mask of the Router IP Address.

Default Router of this CMG

Enter the default Router IP Address for the CMG.

Routing Protocol/Security

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:27:54_ >

For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 2 of 7

Select direction(s) for LAN Network Updates: <Neither >

Select RIP mode to be received from remotes: <RIP1 >

Select RIP mode to send to remotes: <RIP1 >

Select the protocol remotes will use to authenticate local LocalUnit: <NONE>

Select the authentication User ID: <Local Profile Name >

Current User ID: LocalUnit

Select the protocol LocalUnit will use to authenticate all remotes: <NONE>

ENTER to go to next field, ESC to exit Basic Configuration

Scrollable: Select method this system will use to authenticate remote units.

Page Fields

Select direction(s) for LAN Network Updates

- < **Both** > - Set LAN Network updates in both directions.
- < **Neither** > - Disable LAN Network updates. Default.
- < **Send** > - Set LAN Network updates in the send direction.
- < **Receive** > - Set LAN Network updates in the receive direction.

Select RIP mode to be received from remotes

- < **RIP1** > - Set to RIP version 1. Default.
- < **RIP2** > - Set to RIP version 2.
- < **RIP1/RIP2** > - Set to Rip Version 1 or 2.

Select RIP mode to send to remotes

- < **RIP1** > - Set to RIP version 1. Default.
- < **RIP2** > - Set to RIP version 2.
- < **RIP1/RIP2** > - Set to Rip Version 1 or 2.

Basic Configuration

Routing Protocol/Security

Select the protocol remotes will use to authenticate local LocalUnit

<CHAP> - Set authentication to CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol).

<PAP> - Set authentication to PAP (Password Authentication Protocol).

<NONE> - Disable authentication. Default.

Change the CHAP Secret LocalUnit will send?

Note: this field displays only with a selection on **<CHAP>**

Selection is: **<YES>**, **<NO>**. Below the current Secret Password is listed.

If **<YES>** is selected, the operator will be requested to enter in a new password, and retype this password to confirm.

Change the PAP Secret LocalUnit will send?

Note: this field displays only with a selection on **<PAP>**.

Selection is: **<YES>**, **<NO>**. Below the current Secret Password is listed.

If **<YES>** is selected, the operator will be requested to enter in a new password, and retype this password to confirm.

Select the authentication User ID

<Local Profile Name> Displays the current Local Unit name. Default

<Local Custom Name> With this selection you will be prompted to enter a Custom name. This name can be up to 32 characters long.

```
|||      Select the authentication User ID:                <Local Custom Name >      |
|||      Current User ID: ( ████████████████████████████████████████████████████████ )  |
|||      |
```

Select the protocol LocalUnit will use to authenticate all remotes

<CHAP> - Set authentication to CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol).

<PAP> - Set authentication to PAP (Password Authentication Protocol).

<NONE> - Disable authentication. Default.

WAN Interface Connections

This screen will display the Port Number and connection information of existing WANs. The window displays one WAN initially. As you set the connection type and then press [ENTER] the next WAN will display.

Note: You are not allowed to back up to the previous WAN on the list. This screen will only hold 8 WANs on a page, additional pages are added as needed.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:36:24_ >
-----
For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 3 of 7
Select the Type of WAN Connection for each connected port:

Port Number      WAN Connection      WAN Connection Type
1                A:1:9-9             <PPP> >
2                A:1:10-10            <PPP> >
3                A:1:11-11            <PPP> >
4                A:1:12-12            <PPP> >
5                A:1:13-13            <PPP> >
6                A:1:14-14            <PPP> >
7                A:1:15-15            <PPP in Frame Relay>
8                A:1:16-16            <Frame Relay 1490> >

For Frame Relay, Set Option for PVC Management: <Disabled>

ENTER to go to next field, ESC to exit Basic Configuration
Scrollable: Select the PVC Management type to be used.
```

Page Fields

Port Number

Displays the Port Number of the WAN (1-24).

WAN Connection

Displays the connection {slot:port:channel} of each existing WAN.

WAN Connection Type

<PPP> - Set the connection type to Point-to-Point Protocol.

<Frame Relay 1490> - Set the connection type to Frame Relay per RFC 1490.

<PPP in Frame Relay> - Set the connection type to PPP over Frame Relay per RFC 1973.

Basic Configuration

WAN Interface Connections

For Frame Relay, Set Option for PVC Management

<Disabled> - Disables Frame Relay

<Annex D> - Set to Annex D, which is a Frame Relay standard extension.

<LMI> - Set to Local Management Interface (LMI) rev1 (DLCI 1023).

Set Poll Interval

Range is between 5-30.

Set Poll Counter

Range is between 1-255.

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:39:09 >

For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 3 of 7
Select the Type of WAN Connection for each connected port:

Port Number	WAN Connection	WAN Connection Type
1	A:1:9-9	<PPP >
2	A:1:10-10	<PPP >
3	A:1:11-11	<PPP >
4	A:1:12-12	<PPP >
5	A:1:13-13	<PPP >
6	A:1:14-14	<PPP >
7	A:1:15-15	<PPP in Frame Relay>
8	A:1:16-16	<Frame Relay 1490 >

For Frame Relay, Set Option for PVC Management: <LMI >
Set the Poll Interval: (10)
Set the Poll Counter: (6)

EN
Editable: P

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:41:18_ >

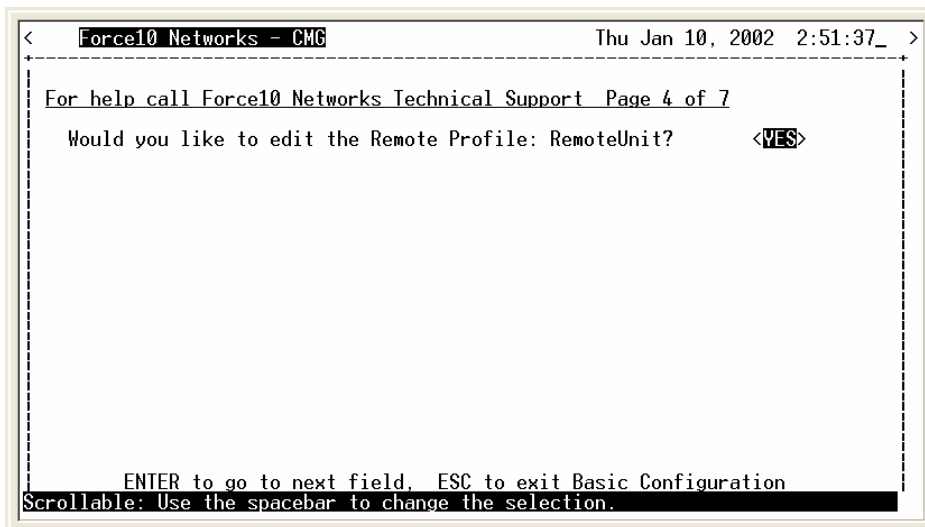
For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 3 of 7
Select the Type of WAN Connection for each connected port:

Port Number	WAN Connection	WAN Connection Type
1	A:1:9-9	<PPP >
2	A:1:10-10	<PPP >
3	A:1:11-11	<PPP >
4	A:1:12-12	<PPP >
5	A:1:13-13	<PPP >
6	A:1:14-14	<PPP >
7	A:1:15-15	<PPP in Frame Relay>
8	A:1:16-16	<Frame Relay 1490 >

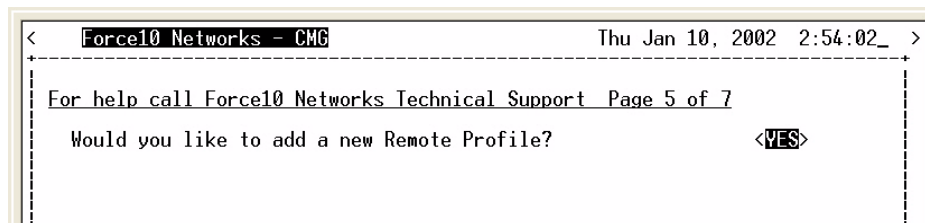
For Frame Relay, Set Option for PVC Management: <Annex D >
Set the Poll Interval: (10)
Set the Poll Counter: (6)

Remote Unit Profile

A screen will ask you if you would like to Edit a Remote Unit Profile. Select **<YES>** and **[ENTER]**. The guide will walk through each Remote Profile that has been set up.



When exiting the last profile the guide will ask if you would like to add a new profile.



Basic Configuration

Remote Unit Profile

The following window configures the Remote Unit.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp "Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:49:47_". The window displays the "Basic Configuration" for a "RemoteUnit" profile. It includes fields for "Protocol" (IP, IPX, Other) and "Mode" (<Route>, <Blocked>, <Bridge>). It also has a "WAN Network Updates" section with a "WAN Connection Type" (PPP) and a "WAN Connection" (A:1:9-9). A question "Does this unit have a numbered IP address assigned on the WAN?" is followed by "<NO>". At the bottom, instructions state: "ENTER to go to next field. ESC to exit Basic Configuration. Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection."

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 2:49:47_ >
-----
For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 4 of 7
Profile Name: (RemoteUnit)

Protocol      Mode      WAN Network
IP            <Route>   Updates
IPX          <Blocked>
Other        <Blocked>

Does this unit have a numbered IP address assigned on the WAN?  <NO>

Select WAN Port Number: <1> Connection WAN Connection Type
                          A:1:9-9      PPP

ENTER to go to next field.  ESC to exit Basic Configuration
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

Page Fields

Profile Name

Enter a unique name for this Remote Unit. Name can be up to 11 characters.

Protocol

IP

Mode - <Route>, <Blocked> and <Bridge>.

WAN Network Updates - <Never>, <Periodic> and <Triggered>.

IPX

Mode - <Blocked>, <Bridge> and <Optimized>.

WAN Network Updates - <Never>, <Periodic>, <Triggered>.

Other

Mode - <Blocked>, <Bridge> and <Optimized>.

Does this unit have a numbered IP address assigned on the WAN?

Selection is: <Yes>, <No>. If <Yes> is selected IP Address and Subnet Mask below are listed.

IP Address

Enter the IP Address of the Remote Unit.

Subnet Mask

Enter the Subnet Mask of the above IP Address.

Select WAN Port Number

Selection is: <None>, <1> through <24> (all existing WAN ports are listed).

Connection

Displays the connection information for the selected WAN in the form {slot:port:channel}.

WAN Connection Type

Displays the WAN connection type (PPP, Frame Relay 1490 or PPP in Frame Relay).

DLCI

Enter the Data Link Connection Identifier. Range is between 16-1022.

Note: This field is not available with a WAN that has PPP set as its connection type.

SNMP Configuration

A screen will ask you if you would like to Add a Remote Profile. Select <NO> and [ENTER]. The guide will move onto the SNMP setup page.

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 3:05:15_ >

For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 6 of 7

Specify the community name, address and access privileges of devices needing to communicate with the local unit through SNMP.

SNMP Communities:	Name	Address	Access
	(public)	(0.0.0.0)	<read>
	(	(0.0.0.0)	<read>

Specify the community name, address and location of devices to which the Unit will report alarm information.

SNMP Trap Destinations:	Name	Address	Location
	(public)	(0.0.0.0)	<Local LAN >
	(	(0.0.0.0)	<Local LAN >

ENTER to go to next field, ESC to exit Basic Configuration

Editable: Please enter a value.

Page Fields

SNMP Communities

Name - Enter a 10 character name.

Address - Enter an IP address (first line) Subnet Mask for second line.

Access - Selection is: <read>, <write>, <both>.

SNMP Trap Destinations

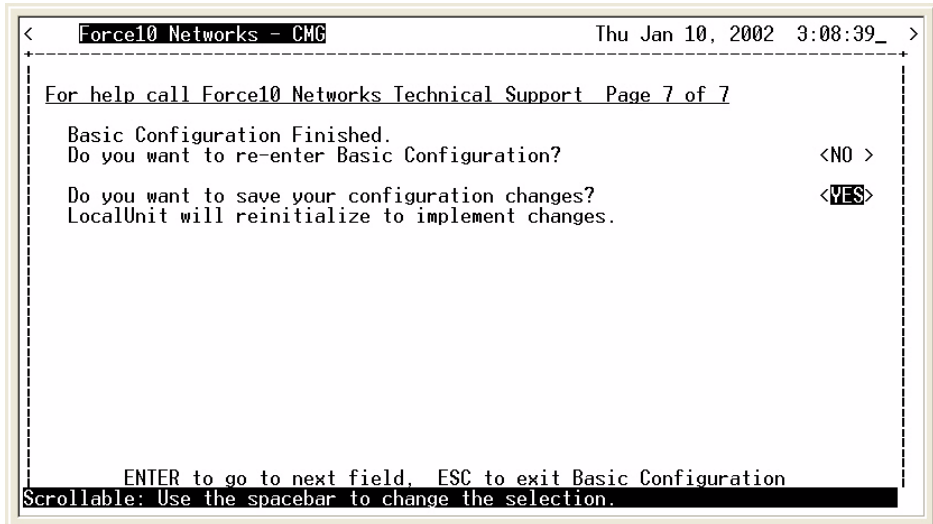
Name - Enter a 10 character name.

Address - Enter an IP address (first line) Subnet Mask for second line.

Location - Selection is: <Local LAN>, will have a selection for each existing Remote Unit profile.

Setup Complete

You have now completed the Basic Configuration. You may re-enter the Basic Configuration to make changes now or at any time.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp of "Thu Jan 10, 2002 3:08:39_". The main text area contains the following information:

- A dashed border enclosing the main content.
- Text: "For help call Force10 Networks Technical Support Page 7 of 7"
- Text: "Basic Configuration Finished."
- Text: "Do you want to re-enter Basic Configuration?" with the selection "<NO >" to its right.
- Text: "Do you want to save your configuration changes?" with the selection "<YES>" to its right.
- Text: "LocalUnit will reinitialize to implement changes."
- At the bottom, a black bar contains the text: "ENTER to go to next field, ESC to exit Basic Configuration"
- Below the black bar, the text "Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection." is visible.

Basic Configuration

Setup Complete

CHAPTER 7

Verification Window

The Verification window is used to identify suspected communication problems between the Local (LAN) and Remote (WAN) devices.

In this Chapter

- Ping Utility
- Trace Route
- Port Monitor

Verification Window

Ping Utility

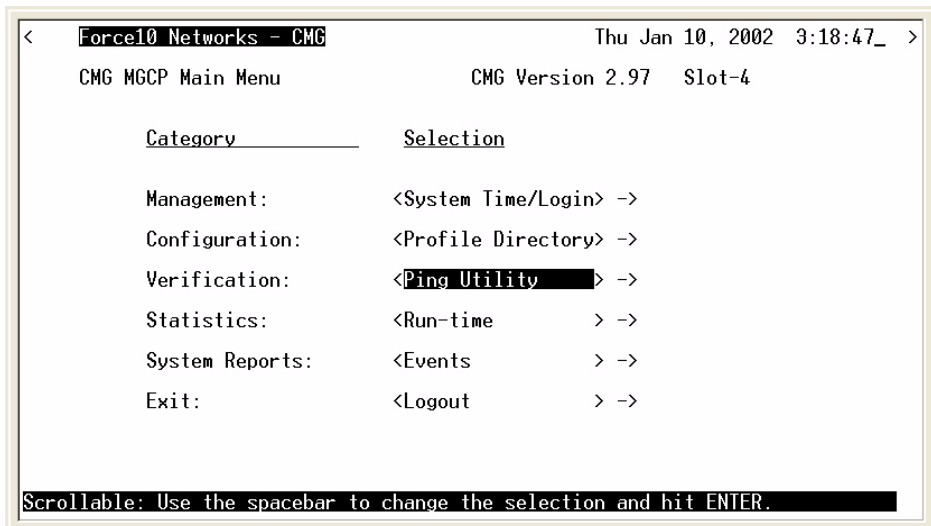
Ping Utility

Use this option to verify any communication problems between the Router and various devices connected to your LAN or at a Remote location. Problems are detected when a “ping” is sent to a device. If the device echoes back to the Router, then communications are operating normally. If no echo returns, then further investigation is needed. Devices must be running TCP/IP software in order for the ping to be successful.

A single ping may be used, where only one packet is sent to the device being tested, or a continuous ping to the device until you manually terminate the test. Continual pinging may help identify intermittent communication problems. Please note that when pinging a device on a remote LAN, it is not unusual for the first ping to fail.

NOTE: In order to perform LAN port testing, the selected frame type must be Ethernet II and the Router’s IP Address must be configured.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until **Ping Utility** is highlighted on the **Verification** option.



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 3:18:47_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu          CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

  Category      Selection
  Management:   <System Time/Login> ->
  Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
  Verification:  <Ping Utility> ->
  Statistics:   <Run-time> > ->
  System Reports: <Events> > ->
  Exit:         <Logout> > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

2. Press [ENTER]. The **LAN Port Verification** window will display.

3. To initiate a Ping, select **START PING** <**Single Ping**>, scroll to <**Continuous Ping**> if desired and select [ENTER]. The Ping process will begin.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 3:22:11_ >
LAN Port Verification for LocalUnit.
DestHost: ( [redacted] )
Access Port : <Local LAN > ->
Src IP Address: (10.0.0.1 )
Payload Size : (64 )
START PING : <Single Ping > ->
Enter Dotted Decimal IP or Domain Name
```

LAN Port Verification Fields

Dst Host (Destination Host)

Enter an IP Address or, domain name to use for this query. IP Address must be in the form of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is between 0-255.

Access Port

This is the local or remote profile of the network used during the test. The operator can scroll (with the [SPACEBAR]) through the selections of the **Access Port: <Local LAN>** to select the **Local LAN** or any of the defined **Remote Unit(s)**. All defined Remote Profiles will be in this selection.

Src IP Address (Source IP Address)

This is one of the multiple IP addresses assigned to the Ethernet LAN port and will override the IP address that will be used as the source IP address. Default is to use the IP address of the interface from which the ping is sent.

Verification Window

Ping Utility

Payload Size

This optional parameter sets the number of bytes to send in the ICMP echo request payload. Range is 0 to 65500, default is 64.

START PING < >

<Single Ping>

Test for device failure. The single ping test will send one ping and display the results of the test.

<Continuous Ping>

Test for intermittent communication problems.

A continuous ping will send a ping until the test is manually terminated. Results of the continuous ping test are constantly updated, based on the result of each ping sent. Press [ESC] to terminate the test at any time.

Successful Single Ping	
Status	
IP Dst Address	: 100.1.0.26
IP Src Address	: 100.1.0.10
MAC Address	: 00-00_86_62_72_17
Response Time	: < 1ms
Last Result	: Host Responding

Unsuccessful Single Ping	
Status	
IP Dst Address	: 100.1.0.26
IP Src Address	: 100.1.0.10
MAC Address	:
Last Result	: Destination Unreachable

Successful Single Ping	
Status	
IP Dst Address	: 100.1.0.26
IP Src Address	: 100.1.0.10
MAC Address	: 00-00_86_62_72_17
Response Time	: < 1ms
Last Result	: Host Responding
Response Count: 19	Timeout Count: 0

Unsuccessful Single Ping	
Status	
IP Dst Address	: 100.1.0.26
IP Src Address	: 100.1.0.10
MAC Address	:
Last Result	: Destination Unreachable
Response Count: 19	Timeout Count: 0

Response Window Fields:

IP Address

Displays the IP Address entered on the setup window.

MAC Address

When a Single Ping is successful, the MAC Address is displayed. When the test has failed, the MAC Address field does not display, and a timeout result is displayed.

Result or Last Result

Will indicate if the host is responding to the test. Result notices will be one of the following:

Host Responding - This is a successful test with a ping responding.

Destination Unreachable - This is an unsuccessful test. The Router is not able to talk to the IP Address.

Timeout - This is an unsuccessful test. There is no response within a reasonable amount of time.

Response Count

During successful testing the Response Count field will display the number of times that the Router received an echo back from the device.

Timeout Count

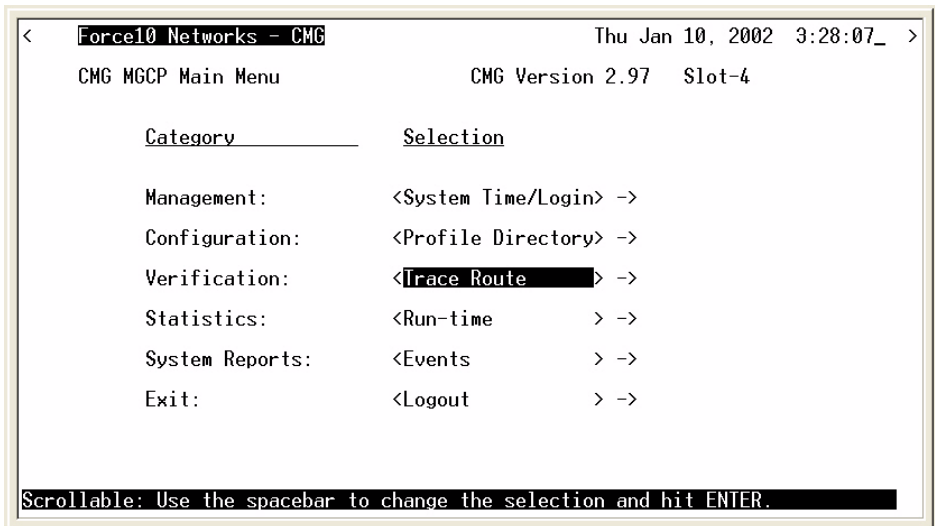
The Timeout Count will increment with each unsuccessful ping. During successful testing, the Timeout Count field will display a 0, which means that no communications errors have been encountered.

NOTE: A continuous ping test may be intermittently unsuccessful. This is an indication that a transmission error may occur with this device during actual data transmission.

Trace Route

The Trace Route option is used to verify timely and reliable connections. The Trace Route utility determines the path a packet follows from source to destination.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until the **Ping Utility** is highlighted on the **Verification** option.
2. Press [SPACEBAR] to scroll to **Trace Route**.

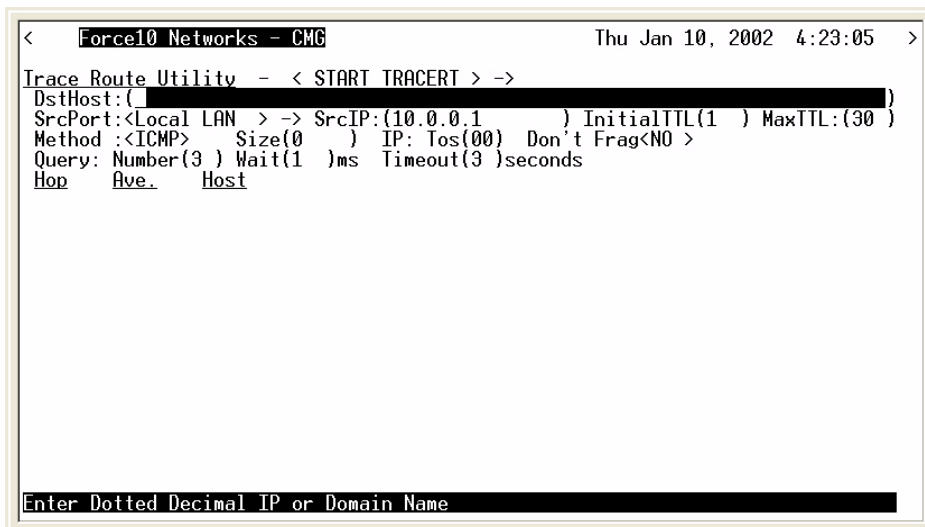


```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 3:28:07_ >
CMG MGC Main Menu CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

Category Selection
Management: <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
Verification: <Trace Route> ->
Statistics: <Run-time> > ->
System Reports: <Events> > ->
Exit: <Logout> > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

3. Press [ENTER]. The **Trace Route window** will display.



Trace Route Utility - <START TRACERT> ->

After all parameters are entered, select <START TRACERT> and [ENTER] to start the trace.

DstHost (Destination Host)

Enter an IP Address or, domain name to use for this query. IP Address must be in the form of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is between 0-255.

Src Port (Source Port)

Scroll through the available options (Local LAN and Remote Units).

SrcIP Port (Source IP Port)

The source IP address from any of the routers numbered IP addresses. Default is the IP address of the router interface used to send the packets.

InitialTTL

This optional parameter defines the beginning of the range of hops to query. Range is 1 - 254 value, **Note: must be less than MaxTTL**. Default is 1.

Verification Window

Trace Route

MaxTTL

This optional parameter defines the end (or the maximum) of the range of hops to query. Range is 2 - 255 value, **Note: must be more than InitialTTL**. Default is 30.

Method

<ICMP> - Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) method of trace routing is the most widely used and has the best reliability. (Default).

<UDP> - User Datagram Protocol (UDP) method requires that all devices in the chain of the trace route support probes on the particular UDP port. This method is not recommended.

Size

Define Packet Size. Range 0 - 65500

IP: Tos

Sets the IP type of service. Range 0x00 - 0xFF Hex. Default is 0.

Don't Frag

Sets the "Don't Fragment" flag in the IP header. This can be used along with the size setting to determine the maximum payload size that can be sent between the router and the destination without fragmentation occurring, the path MTU.

UDP Port

Sets the UDP port to send to. Range is 1 - 65535, with a default of 33434. This setting only applies if the method is set to UDP.

Query: Number

Defines the number of probe packets sent to each hop along the route. Range is 1 - 10, with a default of 3.

Wait

Defines the wait time between queries. Range is 0 - 250 ms. Default is 1 ms.

Timeout

Defines the query timeout. Range is 1 - 60 seconds. Default is 3 seconds.

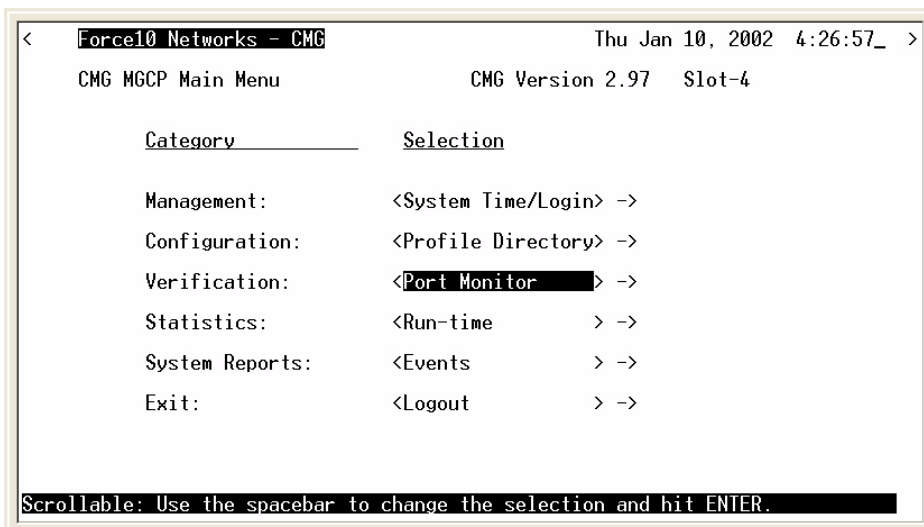
Port Monitor

The Port Monitor option is a diagnostic tool that can be used to review the actual data being transmitted to, or received by the Local (LAN) unit. This can be especially useful in determining where a transmission failure is occurring.

When monitoring is started, a hex display of each transmission, may be viewed as it occurs. The number of packets that are displayed is determined by the value given at the **Number of bytes to display for each packet** prompt. When attempting to determine a transmission problem, it may be useful to print the hex displays for further analysis.

NOTE: The Port Monitor should only be used for installation verification and PPP negotiation verification. Under normal operation the Port Monitor should not be used as it will decrease performance, and if used for an extended period of time it may cause service interruption.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until the **Ping Utility** is highlighted on the **Verification** option.
2. Press [SPACEBAR] to scroll to **Port Monitor**.



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 4:26:57_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

Category Selection
Management: <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration: <Profile Directory> ->
Verification: <Port Monitor> ->
Statistics: <Run-time> ->
System Reports: <Events> ->
Exit: <Logout> ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

Verification Window

Port Monitor

3. Press [ENTER]. The **Port Monitor window** will display, along with a warning that using the Port Monitor will degrade performance.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 4:28:51_ >
PORT Monitor Setup for local
Port Name : <LAN >
START MONITOR ->
Trap On : <All >
Number of bytes to display for each packet: (0 )
Direction : <Both >

+-----+
|Warning: Monitoring WILL degrade Performance & Throughput! Continue |
+-----+
Press any key to continue.
```

Port Name:

Select the Port Name, by scrolling through the list of (LAN Port, Remote Units) with the [SPACEBAR].

Start Monitor

Use this prompt to initiate the packet trace. Select START MONITOR -> and press [ENTER] to begin the trace. As the transmission occurs, the packet hex dump will be displayed on the screen.

If you wish, you may end the trace at any point. Press [ESC] to terminate.

Trap On

Use this field to define what traps to turn on.

<All> - Enable all traps.

<No LCP/PVC> - No Link Control Protocol/PVC keep-alive packets

<ARP/RARP> - Address Resolution Protocol/Reverse Address Resolution Protocol

<ALL IP> - All IP addresses.

<IP ADDR #> - Enter IP address

<All UDP> - All UDP Protocol ports

<UDP Port # > - User Datagram Protocol. Port number range 0 - 65535

<BootP/DHCP> - Bootstrap Protocol/Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

<RIP> - Routing Information Protocol

<STP> - Spanning Tree Protocol

<IPX> - Internet Packet Exchange

<ICMP> - Internet Control Message Protocol

<MGCP> - Master Gateway Control Protocol

<RTP> - Realtime Transport Protocol

<BLOCK TCP> - Block the Transmission Control Protocol

Number of bytes to display for each packet:

Use this field to enter the number of bytes to display for each packet. The range is 0-512.

Direction

Use this field to define the direction to trace. <Both>, <Transmit> or <Receive>.

Verification Window

Port Monitor

The following an example of a Port Monitor trace.

```
>>>Sending>>> Time= 2:55:31 msg-0001 WAN-WAN+2 14 octets (ESC to stop)
```

```
00: 00 01 03 08 00 75 95 01 01 00 03 02 67 66
```

```
FR DLCI-0 Bridged Eth
```

```
<<<Receiving<<< Time= 2:55:31 msg-0002 WAN-WAN+2 19 octets (ESC to stop)
```

```
00: 00 01 03 08 00 7D 95 01 01 00 03 02 67 67 07 03
```

```
10: 06 A0 82
```

```
FR DLCI-0 Bridged Eth
```

```
<<<Receiving<<< Time= 2:55:38 msg-0003 WAN-WAN+2 100 octets (ESC to stop)
```

```
00: 18 41 03 CC 45 00 00 60 E5 1F 00 00 7F 11 81 AA
```

```
10: 14 14 00 03 C0 A8 00 04 00 89 00 89 00 4C 48 0F
```

```
FR DLCI-100 IP
```

```
IP4-HDR: src=20.20.0.3 dst=192.168.0.4 ttl=127 len=20
```

```
UDP-HDR: Ports src=137 dst=137 len=76 cksum is=480F,cac1=0
```

```
>>>Sending>>> Time= 2:55:38 msg-0004 WAN-WAN+2 100 octets (ESC to stop)
```

```
00: 18 41 03 CC 45 00 00 60 E5 1F 00 00 7E 11 82 AA
```

```
10: 14 14 00 03 C0 A8 00 04 00 89 00 89 00 4C 48 0F
```

```
FR DLCI-100 IP
```

```
IP4-HDR: src=20.20.0.3 dst=192.168.0.4 ttl=126 len=20
```

```
UDP-HDR: Ports src=137 dst=137 len=76 cksum is=480F,cac1=0
```

CHAPTER 8

Statistics Window

The Statistics window is used to review data transmission information between the Local (LAN) unit and Remote (WAN) devices. This option allows you to review data transmission statistics to/from remote units. This data will help you to monitor the Router's connection/performance capabilities such as throughput, compression, and errors.

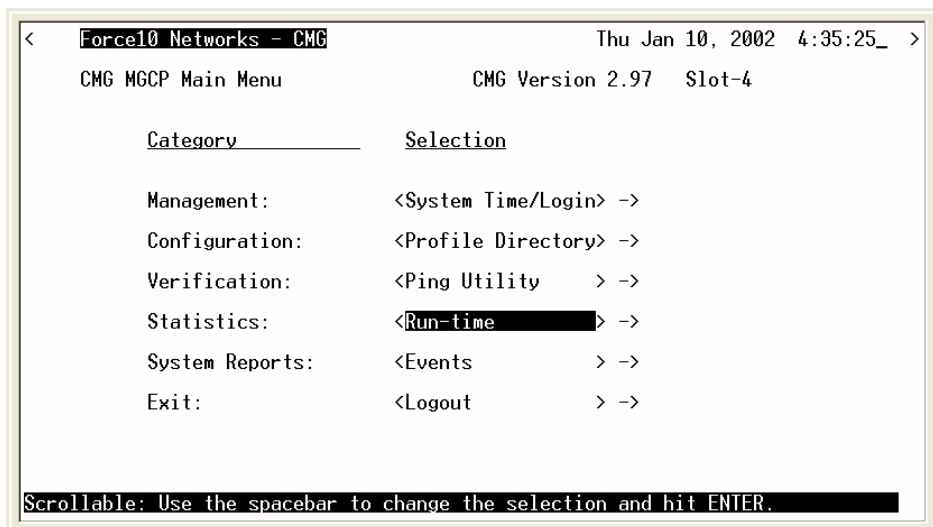
In this Chapter

- Run-Time
- VoIP Channel View
- Priority Queue

Run-Time

Use this screen to review the statistics regarding data transmission to and from remote units. All remote units that appear on the Profile Directory screen will be displayed here. If no data is currently being transmitted to a specific unit, the transmission fields will display 0's.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until **<Run-time>** is highlighted on the **Statistics** option.



2. Press [ENTER]. The **Run-time Statistics window** will display.

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 4:36:26 >

Run-time Statistics for LocalUnit.

Auto-Update: <On> Clear <All > Totals ->

LAN Packet Totals: Received 0 Transmitted 0 Errors 0
WAN Packet Totals: Received 0 Transmitted 1256_ Errors 0

Remote's Forwarded Throughput Comp. Ratio Remote
Name to WAN to/from WAN to/from WAN conns.

RemoteUnit 0 pps 0 /0 bps / 0

CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page backward
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

```

Run-Time Fields

Auto-Update

Use this field to select whether you wish to have this screen automatically updated with new transmission statistics while you are viewing the screen. **<On>** will update the screen every 2 seconds. **<Off>** will disable this feature.

Clear < > Totals

Use this field to reset (clear) the total packets displayed in the following fields.

<All>

Will clear both the LAN and WAN Packet Totals.

<LAN>

Will clear only the LAN Packet Totals.

<WAN>

Will clear only the WAN Packet Totals.

LAN Packet Totals

Use this field to review the number of LAN packets that the local unit has **Received**, **Transmitted**, and contained **Errors**. If **Auto-Update** is set to **<No>**, the LAN packet totals will not increment while the screen is displayed.

Received

This field will increment as packets are received from the LAN. For this total to update, **Auto-Update** must be **<On>**.

Transmitted

This field will increment as packets are transmitted by the Router to the LAN. These include packets received from the WAN as well as internally generated packets. For this total to update, **Auto-Update** must be **<On>**.

Errors

This field increments as packets are transmitted to, or received from the LAN in error. This includes RX CRC errors (partial frames, aborted frames and “bad frames”) and TX retry failures and RX carrier loss errors. This does not include bad packets that result from collisions. For this total to update, **Auto-Update** must be **<On>**.

NOTE: There are WAN protocol packets sent to the telephone company switch, even when there are no active calls.

WAN Packet Totals

Use this field to review the number of WAN packets that the local unit has **Received**, **Transmitted**, and contained **Errors**. If **Auto-Update** is set to **<No>**, the WAN packet totals will not increment while the screen is displayed.

Received

This field increments as packets are received from the WAN. This includes packets from all remote sites. For this total to update, **Auto-Update** must be **<On>**.

Transmitted

This field increments as packets are received from the LAN and internally generated packets, such as network optimization packets, which have been transmitted to the WAN. For this total to update, **Auto-Update** must be **<On>**.

Errors

This field identifies packets that have been transmitted to, or received from the WAN in error. This includes RX CRC errors (partial frames, aborted frames, long frames and “bad frames”) as well as aborted TX frames. It is used to identify WAN communication problems prior to contacting the telephone company for further diagnosis. For this total to update, **Auto-Update** must be **<On>**.

Remote's Name

This field reflects the names of all the Remote (WAN) profiles listed in the Profile Directory.

Forwarded to WAN

This field represents the number of data packets per second (pps) that are being forwarded from the LAN to the respective remote units. Each screen update is a current snapshot of transmission activity.

Throughput to/from WAN

This field value displays two numbers which represent the current bandwidth utilization in bits per second (bps) for each remote site listed. The **TO** number represents transmission utilization going from the LAN to the listed remote unit. The **FROM** number represents transmission utilization received from the listed remote unit.

Comp. Ratio to/from WAN

Using advanced data compression algorithms, the Router constantly seeks to determine the best way to compress the data to be transmitted across the WAN. The values in this field represent how much the Router was able to compress the data. Since some data is more compressible than others, the compression ratio will reflect this.

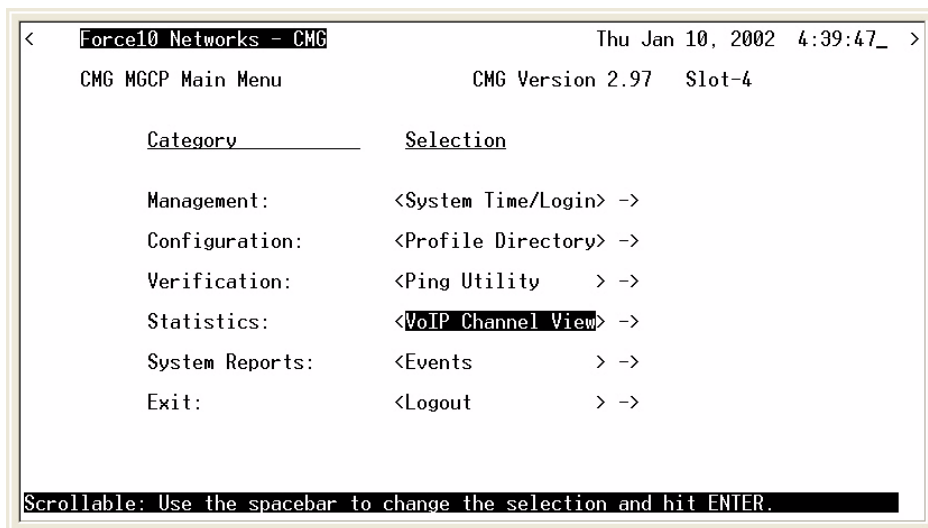
Remote Conns.

The numeric value in this field represents the number of connections currently active per Remote (WAN) site.

VoIP Channel View

Use this screen to review the overall configuration and operation of the 48 possible CMG voice channels and of calls to the attached FXS endpoints.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until <VoIP Channel View> is highlighted on the **Statistics** option.



2. Press [ENTER]. The **VoIP Channel View** window will display.

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 4:41:11_ >
      CMG VoIP Channel Status      Auto-Update: < 2 Sec >
Slot 4  Call agent:0.0.0.0/2727  Endpoint Prefix: aaln/
MGCP:Down  RSIP:Resolved  Wildcard  Status:KA-T0

# STATUS  SIG  CONN      # STATUS  SIG  CONN      # STATUS  SIG  CONN
1-Down    FXSL ..... 17-Down    FXSL ..... 33-Down    FXSL .....
2-Down    FXSL ..... 18-Down    FXSL ..... 34-Down    FXSL .....
3-Down    FXSL ..... 19-Down    FXSL ..... 35-Down    FXSL .....
4-Down    FXSL ..... 20-Down    FXSL ..... 36-Down    FXSL .....
5-Down    FXSL ..... 21-Down    FXSL ..... 37-Down    FXSL .....
6-Down    FXSL ..... 22-Down    FXSL ..... 38-Down    FXSL .....
7-Down    FXSL ..... 23-Down    FXSL ..... 39-Down    FXSL .....
8-Down    FXSL ..... 24-Down    FXSL ..... 40-Down    FXSL .....
9-Down    FXSL ..... 25-Down    FXSL ..... 41-Down    FXSL .....
10-Down    FXSL ..... 26-Down    FXSL ..... 42-Down    FXSL .....
11-Down    FXSL ..... 27-Down    FXSL ..... 43-Down    FXSL .....
12-Down    FXSL ..... 28-Down    FXSL ..... 44-Down    FXSL .....
13-Down    FXSL ..... 29-Down    FXSL ..... 45-Down    FXSL .....
14-Down    FXSL ..... 30-Down    FXSL ..... 46-Down    FXSL .....
15-Down    FXSL ..... 31-Down    FXSL ..... 47-Down    FXSL .....
16-Down    FXSL ..... 32-Down    FXSL ..... 48-Down    FXSL .....
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

```

VoIP Channel View Fields

Auto-Update

The Auto-Update field indicates the number of seconds between updates of the status information for each channel. This field is configurable to <1 Sec>, <2 Sec>, <3 Sec>, <4 Sec>, <5 Sec> and <Freeze>. The <Freeze> value indicates that the status screen will not be updated, even if the status of one or more channels changes.

Slot

The Slot field indicates the Adit 600 slot in which the CMG resides.

Call Agent

The call agent field indicates the configured IP address of the external MGCP call agent.

Endpoint Prefix

The endpoint prefix field indicates the text prefix used to identify MGCP endpoints on the CMG to the call agent. The default value is "aaln/", so the 48 CMG endpoints are identified as aaln/1, aaln/2, ..., aaln/48.

If this field show the value "Mixed", there is at least one CMG channel endpoint which has a different prefix configured, compared to all of the other channel endpoints.

MGCP

The MGCP field indicates the configuration status of the Media Gateway Control Protocol on the CMG. If **Down** - the MGCP protocol on the CMG is disabled, and no softswitch control of the CMG is possible through MGCP. If **Up** - the MGCP protocol on the CMG is active, and ready to communicate with an external call agent.

RSIP Status

This is a combination field that indicates RSIP keepalive status and support for Session Border Controllers (SBC). The format of the field is:

RSIP: *Gateway RSIP State RSIP mode* Status: *RSIP Status*

The field values are as follows:

Field	Value	
Gateway RSIP State	No Reply	The call agent has not answered.
	Resolved	The RSIP was answered OK.
RSIP mode	Wildcard	The RSIP message mode is one wildcard message for the entire gateway.
	Each Endpoint	The CMG Router card will provide an RSIP message for each voice channel. (For an SBC, for example.)
RSIP Status	Wait	The CMG Router card is in the Random delay period before sending the first RSIP.
	Sent	The CMG Router card delivered the RSIP and has not received the OK yet.
	Up	The CMG Router card received the OK.
	KA-TO	Keep-Alive Timeout. Indicates that there was a timeout when the CMG Router card was in a keepalive mode. For SBC endpoint keepalive support, the SBC must send MGCP messages to each endpoint to restart the CMG's MGCP Keepalive endpoint timeouts. Typically, this is an AUEP or AUCX message, but any MGCP message to an endpoint works. If no MGCP message is received before the Keepalive timeout, the CMG restarts that channel and RSIPs toward the call agent for that endpoint.

#

The number column identifies the voice channel number within the CMG. There are 48 possible CMG voice channels, and, on the status screen these are organized into 3 columns of 16 channels each. Each CMG voice channel to be used for VoIP operations must be connected to an FXS channel on one of the FXS or T1/E1 cards within the same Adit 600 chassis. See CONN field below.

STATUS

The STATUS column indicates the combined configuration, restart, and call status for each CMG voice channel.

STATUS	Meaning
Down	Channel is configured as Down or the channel is not connected to an FXS port on the Adit 600.
NotUsed	No SIP user ID has been provisioned for the channel.
Restart	Channel is configured as Up , MGCP is up, and the channel has issued an MGCP restart (RSIP) command to the external call agent. The channel will stay in this state until the call agent responds with a positive acknowledgement.
Idle	The channel has received a positive response to the last restart command and there is no call active.
Setup	An outgoing call (FXS-to-VoIP) is in progress.
Active	An incoming call (VoIP-to-FXS) is alerting the FXS endpoint, or an incoming/outgoing call is active (answered).

SIG

The SIG column indicates the signaling type configured for each CMG voice channel.

Type	Meaning
FXSL	FXS - Loop Start.
FXSG	FXS - Ground Start.

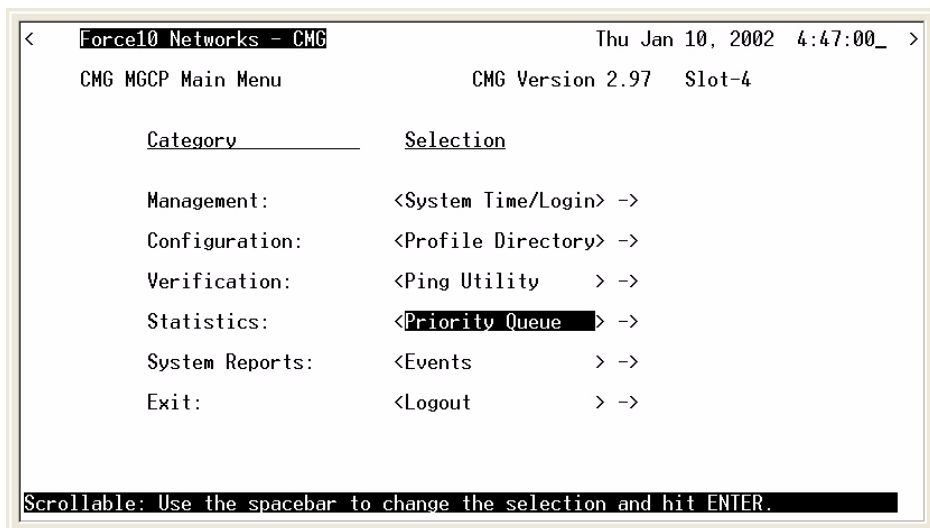
CONN

The CONN column indicates which external FXS interface is attached to this numbered CMG voice channel. If there is no FXS channel attached to a CMG voice channel, no VoIP calls can be made to/from that CMG channel. In this case the status of the CMG channel will be shown in the channel status screen as **Down**, even if the CMG voice channel is configured as **Up**.

Priority Queue

The Priority Queue window displays statistics for the CMG Priority Output Queues. This window will display statistics for the LocalUnit, and all Remotes.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until <Priority Queue> is highlighted on the **Statistics** option.



2. Press [ENTER]. The **Priority Query** window will display.

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 10, 2002 4:48:10_ >

Priority Output Queue Statistics

Auto-Update: <On> Clear <All> > Totals ->

LocalUnit:
Packets Transmitted      0          0          0          0
Bytes Transmitted        0          0          0          0
Packets Queued           0          0          0          0
Bytes Queued             0          0          0          0
Packets Dropped          0          0          0          0
Max Queue Level Pkts.   0          0          0          0
RemoteUnit:
Packets Transmitted     1426          0          0          0
Bytes Transmitted      29946          0          0          0
Packets Queued          0          0          0          0
Bytes Queued            0          0          0          0
Packets Dropped         0          0          0          0
Max Queue Level Pkts.   1          0          0          0

CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page backward
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.

```

Priority Queue Fields

Auto-Update

The Auto-Update field is either <ON> or <OFF>. Default is <ON>.

Clear All

This field will clear the statistic counts. Options are <All>, <LAN>, or <WAN>.

Priority Fields

Priority	Traffic Type
Priority 1	CMG originated RTP, RTCP, MGCP, RIP, LMI, and LCP packets
Priority 2	High priority forwarded traffic based on IP TOS match, other type of CMG originated packets
Priority 3	Default priority forwarded traffic arriving on Serial WAN interfaces
Priority 4	Default priority forwarded traffic arriving on Ethernet interfaces

Statistics Window

Priority Queue

CHAPTER 9

System Reports Window

In this Chapter

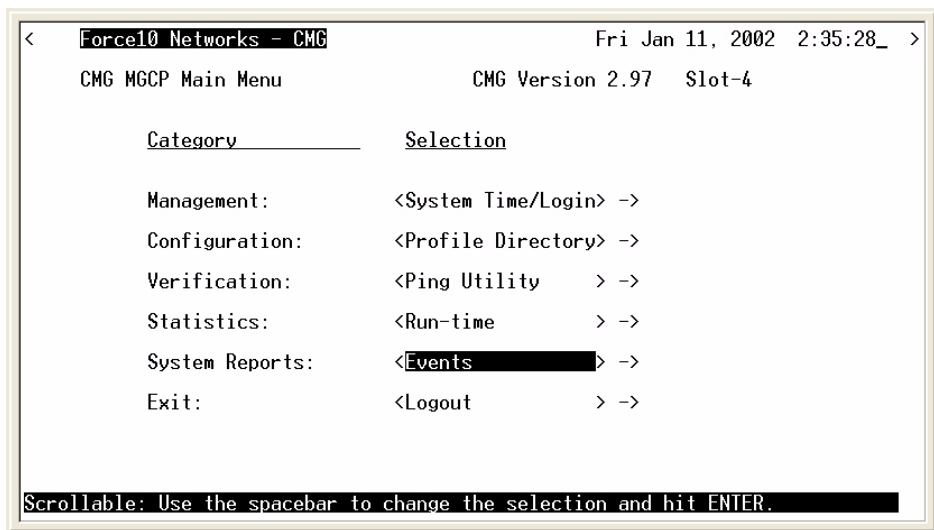
- Events
- Alarms
- Networks/Servers
- Address Tables

Events

Displays the log of events for the Router.

To View the Event Log:

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until <Events> is highlighted on the **System Reports** option.



2. Press [ENTER]. The Event Log will display.

< Force10 Networks - CMG		Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:36:42_ >	
Event Log for LocalUnit.		Auto-Update: <On>	
Time	Message	Count	
Jan 11 2:34:37.5	Export complete in 0.1 secs [87280 bps]	1	
Jan 11 2:34:32.8	Login accepted at ADMIN level	1	
Jan 11 2:34:32.8	Password changed for ADMIN level	1	
Jan 10 6:07:30.7	ADMIN login terminated	1	
Jan 10 4:34:29.2	Export complete in 0.1 secs [87120 bps]	1	
Jan 10 4:34:24.5	Login accepted at ADMIN level	1	
Jan 10 4:34:24.5	Password changed for ADMIN level	1	
Jan 10 4:33:30.5	ADMIN login terminated	1	
Jan 10 3:18:13.4	Export complete in 0.1 secs [86960 bps]	1	
Jan 10 3:18:08.7	Login accepted at ADMIN level	1	
Jan 10 3:18:08.7	Password changed for ADMIN level	1	
Jan 10 3:10:24.2	WAN Link 4:1:1 Down.	1	
Jan 10 3:10:00.4	Export complete in 0.1 secs [86880 bps]	1	
Jan 10 3:09:58.8	DSP3 Online -rt0	1	
Jan 10 3:09:58.8	DSP2 Online -rt0	1	
Jan 10 3:09:58.8	DSP1 Online -rt0	1	
Jan 10 3:09:58.8	DSP0 Online -rt0	1	
More...			
CTRL F to page forward, DOWN ARROW to scroll			

Events Fields

Auto-Update

<On> or <Off>.

Time

The value in this column represents the date and time that the specific event occurred. Events are displayed in descending order with the most recent event displayed at the top of the screen.

Message

This column displays the actual event that occurred on the Router. Use this field to trace the activities of your Router.

Count

If the same event occurs consecutively, the value in the count column will display the number of times that the event occurred, although the message will display only once. Note that the time stamp reflects the date and time that the event first occurred.

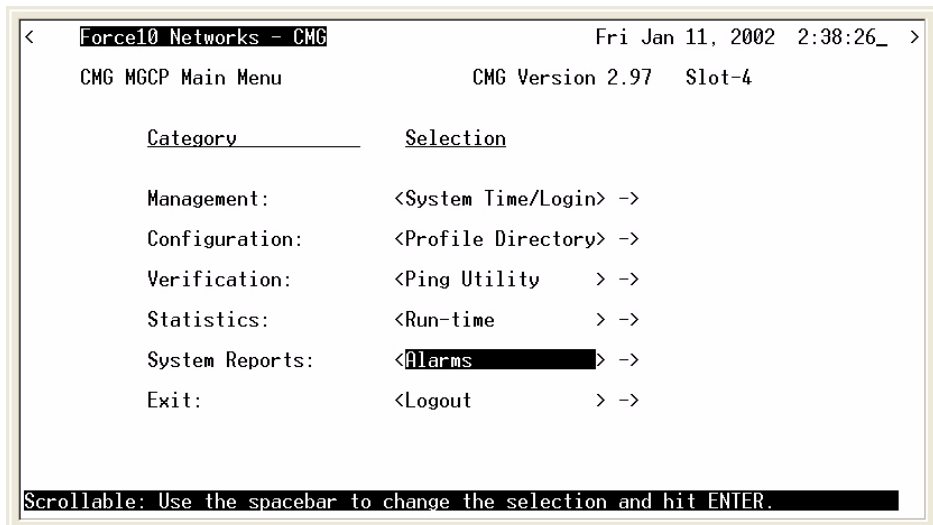
Alarms

This screen displays alarms that have occurred on your Router. When an alarm is triggered, the LED labeled **CRD** on the front of the Router will be RED and will remain until the alarm is cleared. Unlike the **System Events**, alarms will not increment the **Count** field each time they occur. Each alarm will be listed separately and the **Count** field will display a value of 1.

Alarm listings will also appear as flashing or bold text entries in the **User Event Log**. Please note that all alarms will generate SNMP traps.

The Alarm Log is cleared when the Router is reinitialized.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until the **Alarms** is highlighted on the **System Reports** option. Use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll to Alarms if it not displayed.



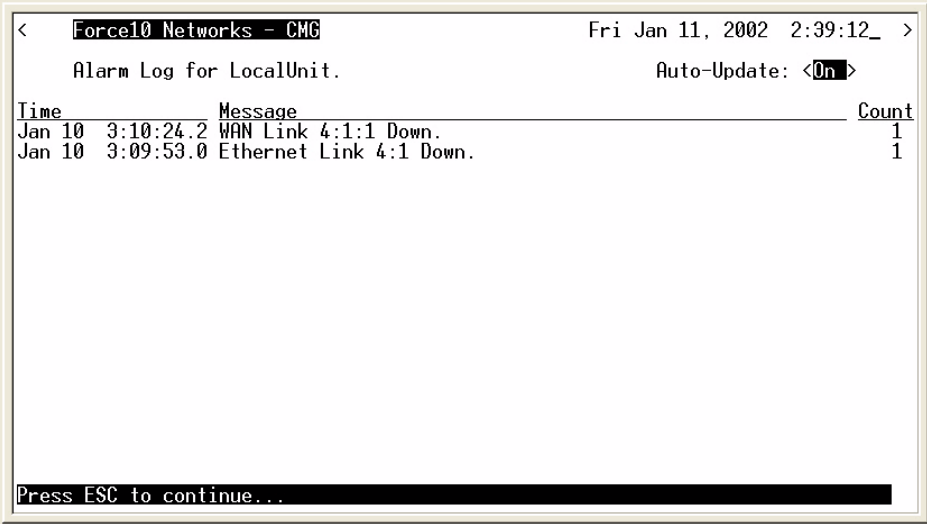
```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002  2:38:26_ >
CMG MGC Main Menu                                CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

      Category_____  Selection_____

Management:          <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration:       <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:        <Ping Utility      > ->
Statistics:           <Run-time          > ->
System Reports:      <Alarms             > ->
Exit:                <Logout             > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

2. Press [ENTER]. The **Alarm Log** will display.



Time	Message	Count
Jan 10 3:10:24.2	WAN Link 4:1:1 Down.	1
Jan 10 3:09:53.0	Ethernet Link 4:1 Down.	1

Press ESC to continue...

Alarms Fields

Auto-Update

Use this field to have this screen automatically update with events while you are viewing the screen. **<On>** will update the screen every 5 seconds, **<Off>** will disable this feature.

Time

Displays the date and time that the alarm occurred. Alarms are displayed in descending order with the most recent alarm first.

Message

Displays the actual alarm that triggered the alarm on the Router.

Count

Unlike the Event screen, the value in the count column will not increment each time that the alarm occurs. Note that the time stamp reflects the time that the alarm first occurred.

Networks/Servers

Use this screen to review all of the networks and servers that your Local (LAN) unit has learned on its Local LAN or from remote units, as well as static entries.

By sending out IPX and IP RIP (Routing Information Protocol) and IPX SAP (Service Advertising Protocol) packets and monitoring RIP and SAP packets from other devices, the Router will learn about other servers and networks. The Router will constantly monitor RIP and SAP packets to ensure that the status of the network or server has changed. Should a RIP or SAP packet indicate a change in status, the Router would update the data in the table and send the information to all enabled remotes to exchange the updated data. This screen will change depending on the values in the **Display** and **Learned From** fields.

1. On the Main Menu, [TAB] to the **System Reports** option.
2. Press [SPACEBAR] to scroll to **Networks/Servers**.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:43:30_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu                                     CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

  Category_____  Selection_____

Management:       <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration:    <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:     <Ping Utility    > ->
Statistics:       <Run-time        > ->
System Reports:   <Networks/Servers> ->
Exit:            <Logout          > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

3. Press [ENTER]. The **Networks/Servers listing** will display.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002  2:45:11_ >
Total Entries-3 on 2 Ports
Flush learned entries: <Off>
Display: <IP Networks>  Learned From: <All Ports  >  Auto-Update: <On >

      Network      Subnet Mask      Metric Next Gateway      Port Name
1. Static 0.0.0.0      0.0.0.0      1
2. Static 192.168.1.0  255.255.255.0  1
3. Direct 10.0.0.0    255.0.0.0    1      10.0.0.1      Local LAN

CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page backward
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

System Reports Window

Networks/Servers

4. To view the other display options, scroll through the **Display: <IP Networks>** field.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:47:05 >
Total Entries-0 on 0 Ports
Flush learned entries: <Off>
Display: <IPX Networks> Learned From: <All Ports > Auto-Update: <On >

  Network Hops Ticks Next IPX Router Port Name Frame Type _

CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page backward
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:47:36 >
Total Entries-0 on 0 Ports
Flush learned entries: <Off>
Display: <IPX Servers> Learned From: <All Ports > Auto-Update: <On >

  Network Hops Type Name Port Name Frame Type _

CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page backward
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

Networks/Servers Fields

Display

Use this field to select whether you wish to view the table for <**IP Networks**>, <**IPX Networks**> or <**IPX Servers**>. Use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll though the options, the screen will update accordingly.

Learned From

Will select what to learn from, the Local LAN or from any of the Remote sites listed in the Profile Directory. Use the [SPACEBAR] to scroll though the options, the screen will update accordingly.

Auto-Update

Use this field to have this screen automatically update with events while you are viewing the screen. <**On**> will update the screen every 5 seconds.

Network

This field displays the network IP address of each network known to the Router. If this route was added using one of the Static Network screens, **Static** will appear before the address of this entry. If this route was learned by the local unit, **Direct** will appear before the address.

Type

This field displays the Hex value assigned to each known server. This field applies only to **IPX Servers**.

Name

This field displays the first 11 characters of the name of each known server. This field applies only to **IPX Servers**.

Metric

This field displays the numeric value (of hops) indicating the distance from your Local (LAN) network to the destination network. This field applies only to **IP Networks**.

Next Gateway

This field displays the MAC Address of the first gateway (Router) that the data will use to reach the destination network. This field is only used on **IP Networks**.

Hops

See **Metric**, above. This field is only used on **IPX Networks**.

System Reports Window

Networks/Servers

Ticks

This field displays the distance between two networks as measured in time increments (1/18th of a second). This information is only used by **IPX Networks**. Like hops, ticks may be used to designate primary and secondary routes to the same network. Although both the hops and ticks values are considered when determining routing priority, for Novell networks, the tick value is considered first.

Next IPX Router

This field displays the MAC Address of the next gateway (Router) that the data will use to reach the destination network. This applies only to **IPX Networks**.

Frame Type

This field will display the chosen frame type of the packets that are sent and received by the Router. If a packet is received that is formatted in a frame type that has not been enabled, the Router will not accept the data. Note that multiple frame types may be supported simultaneously. This field applies only to **IPX Networks**.

Address Tables

Use this screen to review the MAC Address and IP Address of the devices that are known by the Router. The Router will monitor traffic on the LAN/WAN and dynamically learn the MAC Address and/or IP Address of each device. This learning is a continuous process that occurs automatically as communication takes place on the LAN or across the WAN. The MAC Address and IP Address Tables, along with Network Tables are used to determine if and where the Router should send packets.

1. On the Main Menu, [TAB] to the <System Reports> option.
2. Press [SPACEBAR] to scroll to <Address Tables>.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:51:27_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu                                     CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

  Category_____  Selection
Management:        <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration:     <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:      <Ping Utility   > ->
Statistics:        <Run-time       > ->
System Reports:    <Address Tables > ->
Exit:              <Logout         > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

System Reports Window

Address Tables

- Press [ENTER]. The **Address Tables** window will display. This window will change as different options are selected.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:52:37_ >
LocalUnit has learned 1 MAC Address from 1 Port.
Flush learned entries: <Off>
Display: <MAC Address> Learned From: <All Ports > Auto-Update: <On >

  Port Name      MAC Address
1. Local LAN    Direct 00E0976B5916
```

**MAC
Address**

CTRL F to page
Scrollable: 1

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:53:00_ >
LocalUnit has learned 1 IP Address from 1 Port.
Flush learned entries: <Off>
Display: <IP Address> Learned From: <All Ports > Auto-Update: <On >

  Port Name      IP Address      MAC Address
1. Local LAN    Direct 10.0.0.1  00E0976B5916

CTRL F to page forward, CTRL B to page backward
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
```

**IP
Address**

Address Tables Fields

Flush Learned Entries

This field will eliminate all the learned entries from either the **<MAC Address>** table or the **<IP Address>** table when the field is changed from **<Off>** to **<On>**. Use the **[SPACEBAR]** to scroll to the selection.

Display

Use this field to select to view the address table by **<MAC Address>** or **<IP Address>**. Use the **[SPACEBAR]** to select the appropriate view. The screen will update accordingly as you scroll between options. When the view by **IP Address** is selected, the table may also display the corresponding **MAC Address** for locally learned devices. Corresponding **MAC Addresses** are only displayed if the Router has encountered an ARP/RARP packet.

Learned From

Will select to view devices learned from the LAN or from any remote units. This field will display either **<All Ports>**, **<Local LAN>** or each of the individual **Remotes** listed in the Profile Directory. The screen will update accordingly as you scroll between options.

Auto-Update

Use this field to have this screen automatically update with events while you are viewing the screen. **<On>** will update the screen every 5 seconds.

Port Name

Displays the Port Name of the learned address.

IP Address

Displays the IP Address of the learned address.

MAC Address

Displays the MAC Address of the learned address.

System Reports Window

Address Tables

CHAPTER 10

Exit Window

In this Chapter

- Logout
- Reinitialize

Logout

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until the <Logout> is highlighted on the **Exit** option.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002 3:02:15_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu                                     CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

  Category_____  Selection_____

Management:      <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration:   <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:    <Ping Utility   > ->
Statistics:      <Run-time       > ->
System Reports:  <Address Tables > ->
Exit:            <Logout         > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

2. Press [ENTER]. The system will exit out of the Router GUI and the following message is displayed.

```
Session released on Fri Jan 11, 2002 3:02:55
Terminating Force10 Networks CMG connection . .
Connection closed by foreign host.
> _
```

Reinitialize

Some changes that you make to the Management software will not take effect until the Router is reinitialized. Since this procedure is common to all functions within the software, the reinitialization procedure appears on the Main Menu.

1. On the Main Menu, press [TAB] until the **Logout** is highlighted on the **Exit** option.
2. Press [SPACEBAR] to scroll to **Reinitialize**.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002 3:05:03_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu                                     CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

  Category_____  Selection

Management:       <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration:    <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:     <Ping Utility   > ->
Statistics:       <Run-time       > ->
System Reports:   <Events         > ->
Exit:             <Reinitialize   > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

3. Press [ENTER]. The following message is displayed:

```
Exit:             <Reinitialize   > ->

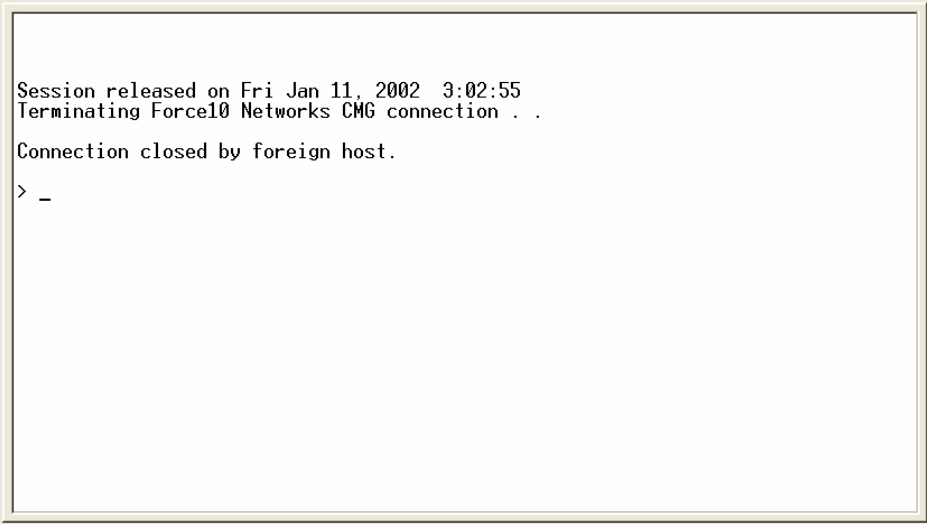
+-----+
| Do you wish to reinitialize the unit? <NO> |
+-----+

Scrollable: Select Yes to reinitialize the unit.
```

Exit Window

Reinitialize

4. Press [SPACEBAR] to scroll <NO> to <YES>, and press [ENTER]. The system will close the session and reboot.



```
Session released on Fri Jan 11, 2002 3:02:55  
Terminating Force10 Networks CMG connection . .  
Connection closed by foreign host.  
> _
```

CHAPTER 11

Router Configuration

In this Chapter

- Basic Setup
- Basic VoIP Setup
- Fax and Modem Setup
- PPP Internet Connection and Public IP Address Routing
- Frame Relay Internet Connection and Public IP Address Routing
- Internet Connection using PPP, NAT/PAT and Firewall Filters
- Internet Connection using NAT and Static NAT Addresses
- Back-to-Back with PPP
- Back-to-Back with Multi-Link PPP
- Back-to-Back with Frame Relay

Router Configuration

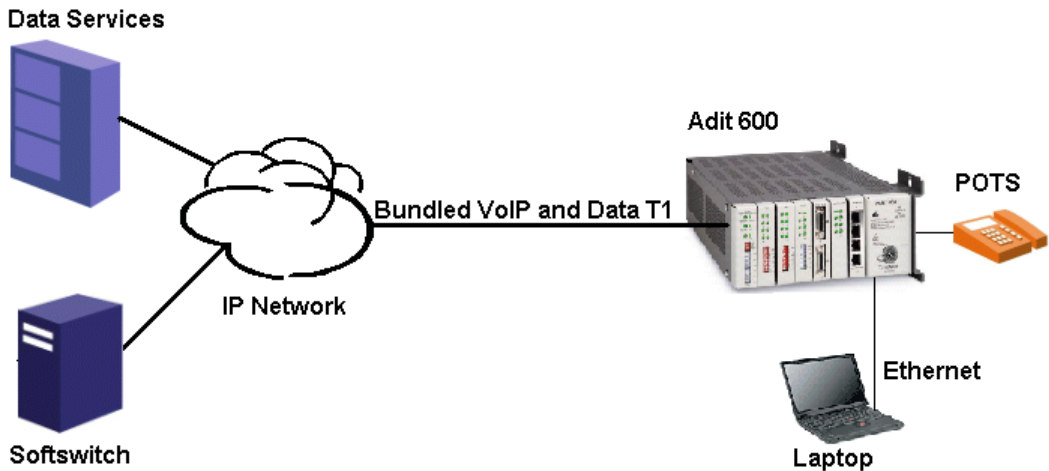
Basic Setup

NOTE: Configuration can be done with CLI commands from the Adit 600 controller or with the Router Menu-Driven Software.

Basic Setup

Command	Description
set {ds0-addr} type data	Confirm DS0 is set to type data. ds0-addr = {slot:port:channel} of DS0 Example: set a:1:1-24 type data
connect {slot:port:trunk} {slot:port:channel}	Cross-connect T1 to router card. Example: connect a:1:1-24 6:1:1 (router in slot 6)
set {router-addr} proxy	Disable/enable router proxy. router-addr = {slot:port} of router card. Example: set 6:1 disable.
set {slot:port} up	Set Router LAN as In-Service. Example: set 6:1 up
telnet {router_card-addr}	Telnet to Router card. router_card-addr = {slot} location of router card Example: telnet 6 (if earlier than 3.0 release {slot:port} must be used)
Local and Remote Profile Setup	
reset	For <u>most</u> router configuration changes to go into effect, the router must be reset. Best practice is to always reset the router after making configuration changes.

Basic VoIP Setup



Adit 600 Implementation in VoIP Application

This example is with an Adit 600 with the following cards installed:

- Controller Card (4.0 or higher)
- CMG Router Card, 1.0 or higher (example - slot 6)
- 3 FXS Cards, 1.03 or higher (example - slots 1, 2 and 3). Cards are configured for Loop Start POTS lines.

Overview:

- Adit 600: the DS0s supporting the bundled service delivery will be cross-connected to the CMG card
- Adit 600: the CMG voice channels are connected to the FXS channels
- Adit 600 CMG: the VoIP parameters and data parameters are configured
- Adit 600 uses endpoint prefix "aaln" and endpoint suffix "1-48" i.e. channel 1 would be suffix "1", channel 5 would be suffix "5"

Router Configuration

Basic VoIP Setup

Command	Description
<code>set local off</code>	Set the controller to use CLI commands
<code>disconnect a:1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the T1-1 on the Controller (slot a)
<code>disconnect 1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the FXS card in slot 1
<code>disconnect 2</code>	Disconnect all connections to the FXS card in slot 2
<code>disconnect 3</code>	Disconnect all connections to the FXS card in slot 3
<code>disconnect 6</code>	Disconnect all connections to the router card in slot 6
<code>set a:1 up</code>	Set the T1 on the controller up
<code>set a:1 fdl none</code>	Disable FDL output messages on the DS1
<code>set a:1 lbo 1</code>	Sets the DS1 Line Build Out to 0-133 feet
<code>set a:1 framing esf</code>	Sets the DS1 to Extended Superframe (ESF) framing
<code>set a:1 id "F10 DS1# A:1"</code>	Sets the DS1 ID to "F10 DS1# A:1"
<code>set a:1 linecode b8zs</code>	Sets the DS1 line coding to B8ZS.
<code>set a:1 loopdetect on</code>	Enables the detection of CSU loop code on the DS1
<code>set a:1:all type data</code>	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
<code>set a:2 down</code>	Set the T1-2 as Out-of-Service
<code>set clock1 a:1</code>	Set primary master transmit clock source
<code>set clock2 internal</code>	Set secondary clock source
<code>set a:2 up</code>	Set the T1-2 as In-Service
<code>connect a:1:1-24 6:1:1</code>	Connect Data DS0s to the CMG card
<code>connect 6:1:1:1-8 1:1-8</code>	Connect CMG voice ports to FXS ports
<code>connect 6:1:1:9-16 2:1-8</code>	Connect CMG voice ports to FXS ports
<code>connect 6:1:1:17-24 3:1-8</code>	Connect CMG voice ports to FXS ports
<code>set verification off</code>	Disable verification prompts

Command	Description
<code>set 6:1:1 encapsulation ppp</code>	Set Router trunk encapsulations to Point-to-Point Protocol.
<code>set 6:1:1 up</code>	Set Router trunk as In-Service
<code>set 6:1 ip address {ip-addr} {mask}</code>	Set Router IP Address and Subnet Mask
<code>set 6:1 up</code>	Set Router as In-Service
<code>add 6 "RemoteUnit" static ip network {ip-addr} {mask} {next-hop-ip-addr} 1</code>	Set router WAN static ip network. Metric set as 1, normally indicates a direct network
<code>set 6 "RemoteUnit" trunk 1</code>	Set router WAN trunk to port 1
<code>set 6 "RemoteUnit" up</code>	Set router WAN as In-Service
<code>set 6 log last detail</code>	Set the router log to add new entries and display the log in detail
<code>set 6 voip sdpaddress 11.168.1.1</code>	Set the address value to be used for the origin and connection lines in the SDP. (May be required depending on how the LAN and WAN are configured.)
<code>reset 6</code>	Reset the CMG card to apply all configurations

Fax and Modem Setup

To configure the T.38 and modem bypass, the following is required.

- Adit 600, release 8.0 or higher
- CMG Router, release 2.3 (or higher) with G.729 feature enabled (software keyed)

The following will configure the Fax and Modem

1. Telnet into the Router:

```
> telnet 4
Connected.
Escape character is '^]'.
Attempting Force10 Networks CMG connection...
CMG [Wed Jan  2, 2002  0:05:05] (<CR> to login)
Password >*****
Select a terminal type...
(<space> or <back-space> to toggle, <CR> to accept)

Terminal: <Generic>
```

2. Select **Configuration: <Profile Directory>** from the Main Menu, and select [ENTER].

**Main
Menu**

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:45:53_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu          CMG Version 2.97 Slot-4

  Category                Selection

Management:              <Software Images > ->
Configuration:            <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:             <Ping Utility > ->
Statistics:               <Run-time > ->
System Reports:           <Events > ->
Exit:                    <Logout > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
  
```

3. Select **Router CARD <Setup ->** and select [ENTER].

**Profile
Directory
Window**

```

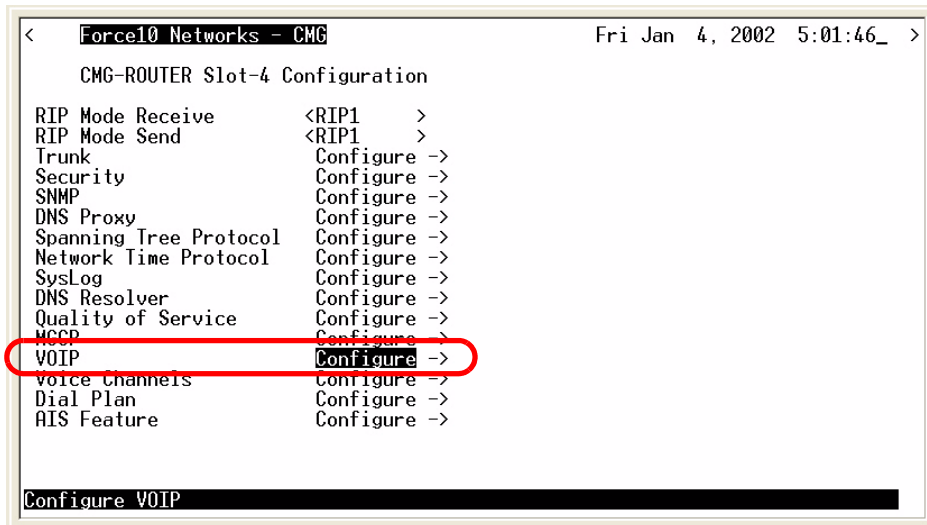
< Force10 Networks - CMG Thu Jan 3, 2002 4:50:13_ >
Profile Directory: 1 Configured and 2 Enabled.

Name      Profile Type  Recv/Send  Profile  State
Router    CARD          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
LocalUnit LAN          NONE/NONE  <Setup ->
1. RemoteUnit WAN      NONE/NONE  <Setup ->  <Enabled >
  
```

Router Configuration

Fax and Modem Setup

4. Select **VOIP Configure ->** and select [ENTER].



```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  5:01:46_ >

CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration

RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1   >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1   >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security              Configure ->
SNMP                  Configure ->
DNS Proxy              Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
SysLog                Configure ->
DNS Resolver          Configure ->
Quality of Service    Configure ->
MCCP                  Configure ->
VOIP                  Configure ->
voice Channels        Configure ->
Dial Plan             Configure ->
AIS Feature           Configure ->

Configure VOIP
```

5. Tab to **Voice Algorithm Settings** - > and select [ENTER].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  5:22:24_ >
  VOIP Setup for local LocalUnit

RTP Baseport:                (30000)

RTCP CNAME: <Gateway ID>
CNAME: [10.0.0.1]

SDP Address: <IP             >

CPD Two Way :                <terminating >
RTCP Interval (s):          (5 )
Jitterbuffer Mode:          <Static >
Hookflash Timeout (ms):     (1500)
Comander:                   <Mu-Law>
Call Detail Record:         <Disabled>
OSI Interval (ms):          (900 )
Payload Type Processing:     <Strict >
G.729A Codec:               <Disabled>
DTMF Notification Edge:     <Trailing>
Ring delay time(s):         (0 )

Codec Packing:
g726_16: <Big Endian >
g726_24: <Big Endian >
g726_32: <Big Endian >
g726_40: <Big Endian >

T38 Fax:
ECM:                        <enabled >
LS Redundancy: <none >
MS Redundancy: <none >
Voice Algorithm Settings ->

Configure Voice Algorithm Settings
```

Router Configuration

Fax and Modem Setup

- Verify that the RTP Payload Type for **nse events** is set to a value that other gateways are using. For most applications this is 100, which is the default setting. Select [ESC] to exit this window, select <YES> and [ENTER] to save any changes.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002  3:37:31_ >
VOIP Algorithm Settings Setup for local LocalUnit

Algorithm ID  SDP Name          RTP      RTP
              SDP Name    Payload Type  Ptime (ms)
g711mu        (pcmu          ) (0  )      <20>
g711a         (pcma          ) (8  )      <20>
g729a         (g729a        ) (18 )      <20>
g726_16       (g726-16     ) (102)      <20>
g726_24       (g726-24     ) (98 )      <20>
g726_32       (g726-32     ) (2  )      <20>
g726_40       (g726-40     ) (99 )      <20>
dtmf-relay    (telephone-event) (97 )
nse events    (X-NSE        ) (100)

Editable: Please enter a value.
```

7. Select **Voice Channels** **Configure** -> and select [Enter].

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  5:24:05_ >
      CMG-ROUTER Slot-4 Configuration
RIP Mode Receive      <RIP1      >
RIP Mode Send         <RIP1      >
Trunk                  Configure ->
Security               Configure ->
SNMP                   Configure ->
DNS Proxy              Configure ->
Spanning Tree Protocol Configure ->
Network Time Protocol Configure ->
SysLog                 Configure ->
DNS Resolver           Configure ->
Quality of Service     Configure ->
MGCP                   Configure ->
VOTP                   Configure ->
Voice Channels         Configure ->
Dial Plan              Configure ->
AIS Feature            Configure ->

Configure Voice Channels
```

Router Configuration

Fax and Modem Setup

8. Select a channel or range of channels to configure.

```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan  4, 2002  5:25:23_ >

Voice Channel Setup for local LocalUnit

Start Channel: (1) End Channel: (1 )

Channel Status: <Enabled >
Event Log:      <None >
Endpoint Prefix: (aaln )
Endpoint Suffix: (1 )
Receive Gain (dB): (0 )
Transmit Gain (dB): (0 )
Silence Suppression: <Disabled>
Type of Service: (00)
DTMF Relay:        <Disabled>
Slash:             <Enabled >
Calling Party Disc: <Disabled>
Fax:                <none >
Modem:              <none >
Signaling type:     <FXS LS>
Short Inter Digit:  (4 )
Long Inter Digit:   (16)

Echo Cancellation: <Enabled >
Echo Tail (ms):    <16 >

VOIP Algorithm Preference Order:
1: <g711mu > 4: <g726_24> 7: <None >
2: <g711a > 5: <g726_32>
3: <g726_16> 6: <g726_40>

RFC2833 Options:
Signals:          <disable>
Payloadtype:      <default>
Repeat Count:     (2 )
Repeat Interval:  (20)
Refresh Interval: (4000)

Editable: Please enter a value.
```

9. Set the **Fax** setting to one of the four Fax options:

<none> - a fax call would be treated as a normal voice call. Default.

<bypass> - will cause the line to transmit in G.711 mode, with silence suppression disabled, on detection of Fax tones.

<T38> - will use T.38 relay if no more than 5 channels are already using T.38 at the same time. Note: there is a limit of six simultaneous T.38 sessions.

<T38reserved> - this line will always be able to use T.38 relay.

Card	Maximum # of Channels configured for T.38 Reserved
CMG, CMG-01	6 Channels
CMG-02	12 Channels

10. Set the **Modem** setting to one of the two Modem options:

<none> - a modem call would be treated as a normal voice call. Default.

<bypass> - upon detection of a modem tone, the line will switch to G.711 mode, with echo cancellation and silence suppression disabled.

11. After the configuration is complete, check the channel status.
On the Main Menu, select **Statistics: <VoIP Channel View>** and [ENTER].
12. Press [ENTER]. The **VoIP Channel View** window will display.

```

< Force10 Networks - CMG                                     Wed Feb  6, 2002  6:19:48 >
      CMG VoIP Channel Status                               Auto-Update: < 2 Sec >
Slot 4  Call agent:0.0.0.0/2727  Endpoint Prefix: aaln/
MGCP:Down  RSIP:Resolved  Wildcard  Status:KA-T0

# STATUS  SIG  CONN      # STATUS  SIG  CONN      # STATUS  SIG  CONN
1-Idle    FXSL 1:1      17-Down   FXSL ..... 33-Down   FXSL .....
2-Idle    FXSL 1:2      18-Down   FXSL ..... 34-Down   FXSL .....
3-Active  FXSL 1:3      19-Down   FXSL ..... 35-Down   FXSL .....
4-Data    FXSL 1:4      20-Down   FXSL ..... 36-Down   FXSL .....
5-Fax     FXSL 1:5      21-Down   FXSL ..... 37-Down   FXSL .....
6-Down    FXSL .....   22-Down   FXSL ..... 38-Down   FXSL .....
7-Down    FXSL .....   23-Down   FXSL ..... 39-Down   FXSL .....
8-Down    FXSL .....   24-Down   FXSL ..... 40-Down   FXSL .....
9-Down    FXSL .....   25-Down   FXSL ..... 41-Down   FXSL .....
10-Down   FXSL .....   26-Down   FXSL ..... 42-Down   FXSL .....
11-Down   FXSL .....   27-Down   FXSL ..... 43-Down   FXSL .....
12-Down   FXSL .....   28-Down   FXSL ..... 44-Down   FXSL .....
13-Down   FXSL .....   29-Down   FXSL ..... 45-Down   FXSL .....
14-Down   FXSL .....   30-Down   FXSL ..... 46-Down   FXSL .....
15-Down   FXSL .....   31-Down   FXSL ..... 47-Down   FXSL .....
16-Down   FXSL .....   32-Down   FXSL ..... 48-Down   FXSL .....
Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection.
  
```

In the status field, the following can be displayed, regarding Fax and Modem settings:

Display	Setting
Fax	Channel is set to T.38
Data	Channel is set to Modem Bypass
Active	Channel is set for a Voice call

Router Configuration

PPP Internet Connection and Public IP Address Routing

PPP Internet Connection and Public IP Address Routing

Router in Slot 1

ISP Router that provides the Internet connection.

Command	Description
set clock1 a:1	Set primary master transmit clock source
set 1 default	Set Router to default settings
disconnect a:1	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
disconnect 1	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
set a:1:all type data	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
connect a:1:all 1:1:1	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Boulder"	Rename "LocalUnit" (default) to "Boulder" (LAN)
rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
set 1:1 ip address 215.168.21.14 255.255.255.0	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
add 1 "wan1" static ip network 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 1	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
set 1 "wan1" trunk 1	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk 1
reset 1	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Frame Relay Internet Connection and Public IP Address Routing

Router in Slot 1

ISP Router that provides the Internet connection.

Command	Description
set clock1 a:1	Set primary master transmit clock source
set 1 default	Set Router to default settings
disconnect a:1	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
disconnect 1	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
set a:1:all type data	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
connect a:1:all 1:1:1	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Boulder"	Rename the "LocalUnit" (default) to "Boulder" (LAN)
rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
set 1:1 ip address 215.168.21.14 255.255.255.0	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
add 1 "wan1" static ip network 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 1	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
set 1:1:1 encapsulation fr	Set the encapsulation on trunk 1 to Frame Relay
set 1 lmi annexd	Disable LMI to Annex D
set 1 "wan1" trunk 1	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk 1
set 1 "wan1" dlci 101	Set the DLCI number
reset 1	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Router Configuration

Internet Connection using PPP, NAT/PAT and Firewall Filters

Internet Connection using PPP, NAT/PAT and Firewall Filters

Router in Slot 1

ISP Router that provides the Internet connection. Router with NAT/PAT and Firewall Filters.

Command	Description
set clock1 a:1	Set primary master transmit clock source
set 1 default	Set Router to default settings
disconnect a:1	Disconnect all connections to the Controller T1 (a:1)
disconnect 1	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
set a:1:all type data	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
connect a:1:all 1:1:1	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Boulder"	Rename "LocalUnit" (default) to "Boulder" (LAN)
rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
set 1:1 ip address 192.168.21.14 255.255.255.0	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
set 1 "wan1" nat enable	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" enable NAT mapping
set 1 "wan1" nat port dynamic	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to set NAT port mapping to be dynamic
set 1 "wan1" nat address 216.174.44.2 1	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" NAT address
add 1 "wan1" static ip network 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 1	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
add 1 "wan1" firewall 1 pass incoming log telnet 192.168.21.14/32 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/32	Adds a Firewall rule to the WAN. Where xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx is the host's IP address at the far end that will be able to ping or telnet to the router. 0.0.0.0/0 will allow any other host at the far end to ping and/or telnet to the router.

Router Configuration

Internet Connection using PPP, NAT/PAT and Firewall Filters

Command	Description
add 1 "wan1" firewall 2 pass inout nolog ping 192.168.21.14/32 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/32	Adds a Firewall rule to the WAN. Where xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx is the host's IP address at the far end that will be able to ping or telnet to the router. 0.0.0.0/0 will allow any other host at the far end to ping and/or telnet to the router.
add 1 "wan1" firewall 3 pass inout nolog ping 0.0.0.0/0 0.0.0.0/0	Adds a Firewall rule to the WAN.
add 1 "wan1" firewall 4 pass inout nolog tcp 1-65535 0.0.0.0/0 0.0.0.0/0	Adds a Firewall rule to the WAN.
add 1 "wan1" firewall 5 pass inout nolog udp 1-65535 0.0.0.0/0 0.0.0.0/0	Adds a Firewall rule to the WAN.
set 1 "wan1" trunk 1	Set WAN interface "wan1" to be mapped to trunk 1
set 1:1:1 encapsulation ppp	Set the encapsulation on trunk 1 to PPP
reset 1	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Router Configuration

Internet Connection using NAT and Static NAT Addresses

Internet Connection using NAT and Static NAT Addresses

Router in Slot 1

ISP Router that provides the Internet connection. Router with NAT and Static NAT addresses.

Command	Description
set clock1 a:1	Set primary master transmit clock source
set 1 default	Set Router to default settings
disconnect a:1	Disconnect all T1 connections on the Controller (slot a)
disconnect 1	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
set a:1:all type data	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
connect a:1:all 1:1:1	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Boulder"	Rename "LocalUnit" (default) to "Boulder" (LAN)
rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
set ethernet ip address 192.168.21.15 255.255.255.0	Set the Ethernet IP address and Subnet Mask for the Unit
set ip gateway 192.168.21.14	Set the IP gateway (default route) for the Unit
set 1:1 ip address 192.168.21.14 255.255.255.0	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
set 1 "wan1" nat enable	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" enable NAT mapping
set 1 "wan1" nat port dynamic	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to set NAT port mapping to be dynamic
set 1 "wan1" nat address 216.174.44.2 1	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" NAT address

Router Configuration

Internet Connection using NAT and Static NAT Addresses

Command	Description
add 1 "wan1" static ip network 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 1	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
add 1 "wan1" static nat address 192.168.21.14 216.174.44.232	Add static NAT bi-directional mapping to wan1
add 1 "wan1" static nat address 192.168.21.15 216.174.44.233	Add static NAT bi-directional mapping to wan1
add 1 "wan1" static nat address 192.168.21.16 216.174.44.234	Add static NAT bi-directional mapping to wan1
add 1 "wan1" static nat address 192.168.21.17 216.174.44.235	Add static NAT bi-directional mapping to wan1
set 1:1:1 encapsulation fr	Set the encapsulation on trunk 1 to Frame Relay
set 1 lmi annexd	Disable LMI Annex D
set 1 "wan1" trunk 1	Set the WAN interface ("wan1") to be mapped to trunk 1
set 1 "wan1" dlci 101	Set the DLCI number
reset 1	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

216.174.44.232 is the static NAT address assigned to the router.

216.174.44.233 is the static NAT address assigned to the controller.

216.174.44.234 is the static NAT address for a server*.

216.174.44.235 is the static NAT address for a host*.

*In the private network that can be reached from the outside world.

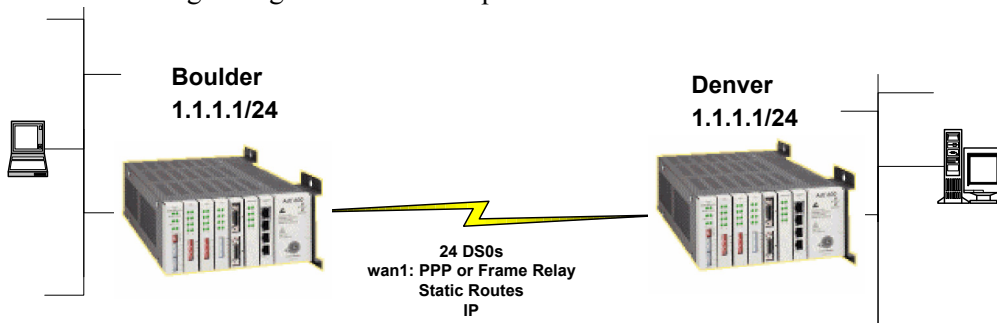
There can be up to 16 static NAT addresses, therefore the actual range can be 216.174.44.232 to 216.174.44.247. Only 4 were used in this example.

Router Configuration

Back-to-Back with PPP

Back-to-Back with PPP

The following configuration will set up two Aditi Routers back-to-back with PPP.



Boulder Router in Slot 1

Command	Description
set 1 default	Set Router to default settings
disconnect a:1	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
disconnect 1	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
set a:1:all type data	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
connect a:1:all 1:1:1	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Boulder"	Rename the "LocalUnit" (default) to "Boulder" (LAN)
rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
set 1:1 ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
set 1:1 phy auto	Set the Physical Specifications to auto-negotiate
add 1 "wan1" static ip network 2.2.2.0 255.255.255.0 1	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
set 1 "wan1" trunk 1	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk 1
reset 1	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Denver Router in Slot 1

Command	Description
<code>set 1 default</code>	Set Router to default settings
<code>disconnect a:1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
<code>disconnect 1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
<code>set clock1 a:1</code>	Set primary master transmit clock source
<code>set a:1:all type data</code>	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
<code>connect a:1:all 1:1:1</code>	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
<code>rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Denver"</code>	Rename the "LocalUnit" (default) to "Denver" (LAN)
<code>rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"</code>	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
<code>set 1:1 ip address 2.2.2.1 255.255.255.0</code>	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
<code>set 1:1 phy auto</code>	Set the Physical Specifications to auto-negotiate
<code>add 1 "wan1" static ip network 1.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 1</code>	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
<code>set 1 "wan1" trunk 1</code>	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk 1
<code>reset 1</code>	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Router Configuration

Back-to-Back with Multi-Link PPP

Back-to-Back with Multi-Link PPP

The following configuration will set up two Adit 600 Routers back-to-back with Multi-Link PPP.

Boulder Router in Slot 1

Command	Description
<code>set 1 default</code>	Set Router to default settings
<code>disconnect a:1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
<code>disconnect 1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
<code>set a:1:all type data</code>	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
<code>connect a:1:all 1:1:1</code>	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
<code>connect a:2:all 1:1:2</code>	Connect all of T1-2 to the Router that is in slot 1
<code>set 1:1:1-2 multilink group 1</code>	Assign 1:1:1-2 to multilink group 1.
<code>rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Boulder"</code>	Rename the "LocalUnit" (default) to "Boulder" (LAN)
<code>rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"</code>	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
<code>set 1:1 ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0</code>	Set the Ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
<code>add 1 "wan1" static ip network 2.2.2.0 255.255.255.0 1</code>	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
<code>set 1 "wan1" trunk multilink group 1</code>	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk multilink group 1
<code>reset 1</code>	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Denver Router in Slot 1

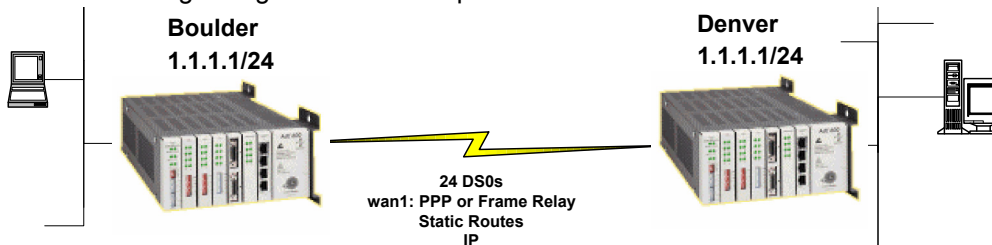
Command	Description
set 1 default	Set Router to default settings
disconnect a:1	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
disconnect 1	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
set clock1 a:1	Set primary master transmit clock source
set a:1:all type data	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
connect a:1:all 1:1:1	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
connect a:2:all 1:1:2	Connect all of T1-2 to the Router that is in slot 1
set 1:1:1-2 multilink group 1	Assign 1:1:1-2 to multilink group 1
rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Denver"	Rename "LocalUnit" (default) to "Denver" (LAN)
rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
set 1:1 ip address 2.2.2.1 255.255.255.0	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
add 1 "wan1" static ip network 1.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 1	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
set 1 "wan1" trunk multilink group 1	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk multilink group 1
reset 1	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Router Configuration

Back-to-Back with Frame Relay

Back-to-Back with Frame Relay

The following configuration will set up two Aditi Routers back-to-back with Frame Relay.



Boulder Router in Slot 1

Command	Description
<code>set clock1 internal</code>	Set primary master transmit clock source
<code>set 1 default</code>	Set Router to default settings
<code>disconnect a:1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
<code>disconnect 1</code>	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
<code>set a:1:all type data</code>	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
<code>connect a:1:all 1:1:1</code>	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
<code>rename 1 "LocalUnit" "Boulder"</code>	Rename the "LocalUnit" (default) to "Boulder" (LAN)
<code>rename 1 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"</code>	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
<code>set 1:1 ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0</code>	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
<code>add 1 "wan1" static ip network 2.2.2.0 255.255.255.0 1</code>	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
<code>set 1:1:1 encapsulation fr</code>	Set the encapsulation on trunk 1 to Frame Relay
<code>set 1 lmi disable</code>	Disable LMI (Local Management Interface)
<code>set 1 "wan1" trunk 1</code>	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk 1
<code>set 1 "wan1" dlci 101</code>	Set the DLCI number
<code>reset 1</code>	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Denver Router in Slot 3

Command	Description
set 3 default	Set Router to default settings
disconnect a:1	Disconnect all connections to the T1 on the Controller (slot a)
disconnect 3	Disconnect all connections to the router in slot 1
set clock1 a:1	Set primary master transmit clock source
set a:1:all type data	Set the T1-1 of the Controller, Type to Data
connect a:1:all 3:1:1	Connect all of T1-1 to the Router that is in slot 1
rename 3 "LocalUnit" "Denver"	Rename the "LocalUnit" (default) to "Denver" (LAN)
rename 3 "RemoteUnit" "wan1"	Rename WAN #1 from "RemoteUnit" (default) to "wan1"
set 3:1 ip address 2.2.2.1 255.255.255.0	Set the ethernet IP address, in the conventional IP address format. (Router LAN)
add 3 "wan1" static ip network 1.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 1	Adds a static IP network (route) to the WAN interface
set 3:1:1 encapsulation fr	Set the encapsulation on trunk 1 to Frame Relay
set 3 lmi disable	Disable LMI (Local Management Interface)
set 3 "wan1" trunk 1	Set the WAN interface named "wan1" to be mapped to trunk 1
set 3 "wan1" dlci 101	Set the DLCI number
reset 3	Reboot the router, to enable all configurations set

Router Configuration

Back-to-Back with Frame Relay

APPENDIX A

User Events

In this Appendix

- User Events
- Authenticate Events
- Triggered Events
- Alarms

User Events

Description

“access” login terminated

Adit Initialized

“IP Address” was dynamically assigned by “remote”

Login accepted at “access” level

Login rejected

Password changed for “access” level

Port “X” connected

Port “X” down

System Date/Time Change recorded

Terminal inactivity, login terminated

Authenticate Events

Description

"sysname" failed to authenticate us using CHAP

"sysname" failed to authenticate us using PAP

Authentication successful to "remote" using CHAP

Authentication successful to "remote" using PAP

Authentication failure to "remote" using CHAP

Authentication failure to "remote" using CHAP
CHAP secret mismatch

Authentication failure to "remote" using CHAP
system name mismatch

Authentication failure to "remote" using CHAP
Retry timeout occurred

WAN protocol is active (inactive) to "remote" on port "X"

LCP negotiation was successful to "remote"

IPCP negotiation was successful to "remote"

CCP negotiation failed to

Triggered Events

Description

Triggered IPX Network request from “X”

Triggered IPX Server request (to) from “X”

Triggered 802.3 IPX Server update (to) from “X”

Triggered 802.3 IPX Network update (to) from “X”

Triggered 802.2 IPX Server update (to) from “X”

Triggered 802.2 IPX Network update (to) from “X”

Triggered ETH II IPX Network update (to) from “X”

Triggered ETH II IPX Server update (to) from “X”

Triggered SNAP IPX Network update (to) from “X”

Triggered SNAP IPX Server update (to) from “X”

Triggered IP Network request (to) from “X”

Triggered ETH II IP Network update (to) from “X”

Alarms

Data integrity fault detected and corrected

This is logged when the unit detects and recovers from a loss of data synchronization.

Dedicated trunk connection on Port “X” lost

Description

[Local LAN, “remote”] [IPX SAP, IPX RIP] [“server name”, “network”] exists at [Local LAN, “remote”]

MAC Address Table is full

Triggered 802.3 IPX (Eth II IP) network update to “remote” fail

Triggered 802.3 IPX server update to “remote” fail

WAN data loss detected, recovery action taken

This is logged when the unit begins the recovery process from trunks with high error conditions.

[Pass, Drop] [dyn] [Any, Protocol=xx, Type=xx, Port=xx] [to, from] <rem sys>
Firewall Rule <rule num>

NOTE: All alarms generate SNMP traps.

User Events

Alarms

APPENDIX B

Protocol Types

In this Appendix

- Protocol Number in Firewall Filters
- Ethernet Protocol Types

Protocol Types

Protocol Number in Firewall Filters

Protocol Number in Firewall Filters

The Router card can filter based on protocol numbers. See *Firewall Filters (Local Profile)* on page 4-32 and *Firewall Filters (Remote Profile)* on page 5-36 for instructions. The following table defines the protocol numbers.

Number	Keyword	Protocol	Reference
0	HOPOPT	IPv6 Hop-by-Hop Option	[RFC1883]
1	ICMP	Internet Control Message	[RFC702]
2	IGMP	Internet Group Management	[RFC1112]
3	GGP	Gateway-to-Gateway	[RFC823]
4	IP	IP in PIP (encapsulation)	[RFC2003]
5	ST	Stream	[RFC1190, RFC1819]
6	TCP	Transmission Control	[RFC793]
7	CBT	CBT	[Ballardie]
8	EGP	Exterior Gateway Protocol	[RFC888, DLM1]
9	IGP	any private interior gateway (used by Cisco for their IGRP)	[IANA]
10	BBN-RCC-MON	BBN RCC Monitoring	[SGC]
11	NVP-II	Network Voice Protocol	[RFC741, SC3]
12	PUP	PUP	[PUP, XEROX]
13	ARGUS	ARGUS	[RWS4]
14	EMCON	EMCON	[BN7]
15	XNET	Cross Net Debugger	[IEN158, JFH2]
16	CHAOS	Chaos	[NC3]
17	UDP	User Datagram	[RFC768, JBP]
18	MUX	Multiplexing	[IEN90, JBP]
19	DCN-MEAS	DCN Measurement Subsystems	[DLM1]
20	HMP	Host Monitoring	[RFC890, RH6]
21	PRM	Packet Radio Measurement	[ZSU]
22	XNS-IDP	XEROX NS IDP	[ETHERNET, XEROX]
23	TRUNK-1	Trunk-1	[BWB6]
24	TRUNK-2	Trunk-2	[BWB6]
25	LEAF-1	Leaf-1	[BWB6]

Number	Keyword	Protocol	Reference
26	LEAF-2	Leaf-2	[BWB6]
27	RDP	Reliable Data Protocol	[RFC908, RH6]
28	IRTP	Internet Reliable Transaction	[RFC938, TXM]
29	ISO-TP4	ISO Transport Protocol Class 4	[RFC905, RC77]
30	NETBLT	Bulk Data Transfer Protocol	[RFC969, DDC1]
31	MFE-NSP	NFE Network Services Protocol	[MFENET, BCH2]
32	MERIT-INP	MERIT Internodal Protocol	[HWB]
33	SEP	Sequential Exchange Protocol	[JC120]
34	3PC	Third Party Connect Protocol	[SAF3]
35	IDPR	Inter-Domain Policy Routing Protocol	[MXS1]
36	XTP	XTP	[GXC]
37	DDP	Datagram Delivery Protocol	[WXC]
38	IDPR-CMTP	IDPR Control Message Transport Protocol	[MXS1]
39	TP++	TP++ Transport Protocol	[DXF]
40	IL	IL Transport Protocol	[Presotto]
41	IPv6	IPv6	[Deering]
42	SDRP	Source Demand Routing Protocol	[DXE1]
43	IPv6-Route	Routing Header for IPv6	[Deering]
44	IPv6-Frag	Fragment Header for IPv6	[Deering]
45	IDRP	Inter-Domain Routing Protocol	[Sue Hares]
46	RSVP	Reservation Protocol	[Bob Braden]
47	GRE	General Routing Encapsulation	[Tony Li]
48	MHRP	Mobile Host Routing Protocol	[David Johnson]
49	BNA	BNA	[Gary Salamon]
50	ESP	Encap Security Payload for IPv6	[RFC2406]
51	AH	Authentication Header for IPv6	[RFC2402]
52	I-NLSP	Integrated Net Layer Security TUBA	[GLENN]
53	SWIPE	IP with Encryption	[J16]
54	NARP	NBMA Address Resolution Protocol	[RFC1735]
55	MOBILE	IP Mobility	[Perkins]

Protocol Types

Protocol Number in Firewall Filters

Number	Keyword	Protocol	Reference
56	TLSP	Transport Layer Security Protocol using Kryptonet key management	[Oberg]
57	SKIP	SKIP	[Markson]
58	IPv6-ICMP	ICMP for IPv6	[RFC1883]
59	IPv6-NoNxt	No Next Header for IPv6	[RFC1883]
60	IPv6-Opts	Destination Options for IPv6	[RFC1883]
61		any host internal protocol	[IANA]
62	CFTP	CFTP	[CFTP, HCF2]
63		any local network	[IANA]
64	SAT-EXPAK	SATNET and Backroom EXPAK	[SHB]
65	KRYPTOLAN	Kryptolan	[PXL1]
66	RVD	MIT Remote Virtual Disk Protocol	[MBG]
67	IPPC	Internet Pluribus Packet Core	[SHB]
68		any distributed file system	[IANA]
69	SAT-MON	SATNET Monitoring	[SHB]
70	VISA	VISA Protocol	[GXT1]
71	IPCV	Internet Packet Core Utility	[SHB]
72	CPNX	Computer Protocol Network Executive	[DXM2]
73	CPHB	Computer Protocol Heart Beat	[DXM2]
74	WSN	Wang Span Network	[VXD]
75	PVP	Packet Video Protocol	[SC3]
76	BR-SAT-MON	Backroom SATNET Monitoring	[SHB]
77	SUN-ND	SUN ND PROTOCOL-Temporary	[WM3]
78	WB-MON	WIDEBAND Monitoring	[SHB]
79	WB-EXPAK	WIDEBAND EXPAK	[SHB]
80	ISO-IP	ISO Internet Protocol	[MTR]
81	VMTP	VMTP	[DRC3]
82	SECURE-VMTP	SECURE-VMTP	[DRC3]
83	VINES	VINES	[BXH]
84	TTP	TTP	[JXS]
85	NSFNET-IGP	NSFNET-IGP	[HWB]
86	DGP	Dissimilar Gateway Protocol	[DGP, ML109]

Number	Keyword	Protocol	Reference
87	TCF	TCF	[GAL5]
88	EIGRP	EIGRP	[CISCO, GXS]
89	OSPFGRP	OSPFGRP	[RFC1583, JTM4]
90	Sprite-RPC	Sprite RPC Protocol	[SPRITE, BXW]
91	LARP	Locus Address Resolution Protocol	[BXH]
92	MTP	Multicast Transport Protocol	[SXA]
93	AX.25	AZ.25 Frames	[BK29]
94	IPIP	IP-within-IP Encapsulation Protocol	[JI6]
95	MICP	Mobile Internetworking Control Pro	[JI6]
96	SCC-SP	Semaphore Communications Sec. Pro.	[HXH]
97	ETHERIP	Ethernet-within-IP Encapsulation	[RFC3378]
98	ENCAP	Encapsulation Header	[FRC1241, RXB3]
99		any private encryption scheme	[IANA]
100	GMTP	GMTP	[RXB5]
101	IFMP	Ipsilon Flow Management Protocol	[Hinden]
102	PNNI	PNNI over IP	[Callon]
103	PIM	Protocol Independent Multicast	[Farinacci]
104	ARIS	ARIS	[Feldman]
105	SCPS	SCPS	[Durst]
106	QNX	QNX	[Hunter]
107	A/N	Active Networks	[Braden]
108	IPComp	IP Payload Compression Protocol	[RFC2393]
109	SNP	Sitara Networks Protocol	[Sridhar]
110	Compaq-Peer	Compaq Peer Protocol	[Volpe]
111	IPX-in-IP	IPX in IP	[Lee]
112	VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol	[Hinden]
113	PGM	PBM Reliable Transport Protocol	[Speakman]
114		any 0-hop protocol	[IANA]
115	L2TP	Layer Two Tunneling Protocol	[Aboba]
116	DDX	D-II Data Exchange (DDX)	[Worley]
117	IATP	Interactive Agent Transfer Protocol	[Murphy]
118	STP	Schedule Transfer Protocol	[JMP]

Protocol Types

Protocol Number in Firewall Filters

Number	Keyword	Protocol	Reference
119	SRP	SpectraLink Radio Protocol	[Hamilton]
120	UTI	UTI	[Lothberg]
121	SMP	SMP	[Ekblad]
122	SM	SM	[Crowcroft]
123	PTP	Performance Transparency Protocol	[Welzl]
124	ISIS over IPv4		[Przygienda]
125	FIRE		[Partridge]
126	CRTP	Combat Radio Transport Protocol	[Sautter]
127	CRUDP	Combat Radio User Datagram	[Sautter]
128	SSCOPMCE		[Waber]
129	IPLT		[Hollbach]
130	SPS	Secure Packet Shield	[McIntosh]
131	PIPE	Private IP Encapsulation within IP	[Petri]
132	SCTP	Stream Control Transmission Protocol	[Stewart]
133	FC	Fibre Channel	[Rajagopal]
134	RSVP-E2E-IGNORE		[RFC3175]
135-254		Unassigned	[IANA]
255		Reserved	[IANA]

Ethernet Protocol Types

This table defines the protocol types that can be used by the LAN Protocol filters. The associated Hex number is entered into the Ethernet Value field see, *Defining Protocol Filters on page 4-28*.

HEX	Description
0000-05DC	IEEE 802.3 Length Field (0-1500 decimal)
1010-01FF	Experimental (for development) Conflicts with 802.3 length fields
0200	Xerox PUP - Conflicts with 802.3 length fields
0201	PUP Address Translation - Conflicts with 802.3 length fields
0600	Xeros XNS IDP
0800	DOD IP
0801	X.75 Internet
0802	NBS Internet
0803	ECMA Internet
0804	CHAOSnet
0805	X.25 Level 3
0806	ARP (for IP and for CHAOS)
0807	SNX Compatibility
081C	Symbolics Private
0888-088A	Xyplex
0900	Ungermann-Bass network debugger
0A00	Xerox 802.3 PUP
0A01	PUP 802.3 Address Translation
0BAD	Banyan Systems Inc.
1000	Berkeley trailer negotiation
1001-100F	Berkeley Trailer encapsulation
1600	VALID

Protocol Types

Ethernet Protocol Types

HEX	Description
4242	BXS Basic Block Protocol
5208	BBN Simnet Private
6000	DEC Unassigned
6001	DEC MOP Dump/Load Assistance
6002	DEC MOP Remote Console
6003	DEC DECnet Phase IV
6004	DEC LAT
6005	DEC DECnet Diagnostics
6006	DEC DECnet Customer Use
6007	DEC DECnet SCA
6008	DEC unassigned
6009	DEC unassigned
6010-6014	3Com Corporation
7000	Ungermann-Bass download
7001	Ungermann-Bass NIU
7002	Ungermann-Bass NIU
7007	OS/9 Microware
7020-7029	LRT (England)
7030	Proteon
7034	Cabletron
8003	Cronus VLN
8004	Cronus Direct
8005	HP Probe protocol
8006	Nestar
8008	AT&T
8010	Excelan

HEX	Description
8013	SGI diagnostic type (obsolete)
8014	SGI network games (obsolete)
8015	SGI reserved type (obsolete)
8016	SGI "bounce server" (obsolete)
8019	Apollo
802E	Tymshare
802F	Tigan, Inc.
8035	Reverse ARP
8036	Aeonic Systems
8038	DEC LANBridge
8039	DEC Unassigned
803A	DEC Unassigned
803B	DEC Unassigned
803C	DEC Unassigned
803D	DEC Ethernet CSMA/CD Encryption Protocol
803E	DEC Unassigned
803F	DEC LAN Traffic Monitor
8040	DEC Unassigned
8041	DEC Unassigned
8042	DEC Unassigned
8044	Planning Research Corporation
8046	AT&T
8047	AT&T
8049	ExperData (France)
805B	VMTP (Versatile Message Transaction Protocol, RFC-1045, Stanford)

Protocol Types

Ethernet Protocol Types

HEX	Description
805C	Stanford V Kernel production, Version 6.0
805D	Evans & Sutherland
8060	Little Machines
8062	Counterpoint Computers
8065	University of Massachusetts, Amherst
8066	University of Massachusetts, Amherst
8067	Veeco Integrated Automation
8068	General Dynamics
8069	AT&T
806A	Autophon (Switzerland)
806C	ComDesign
806D	Compugraphic Corporation
806E-8077	Landmark Graphics Corporation
807A	Matra (France)
807B	Dansk Data Elektronik A/S (Denmark)
807C	Merit Internodal
807D	VitaLink Communications
807E	VitaLink Communications
807F	VitaLink Communications
8080	VitaLink Communications bridge
8081	Counterpoint Computers
8082	Counterpoint Computers
8083	Counterpoint Computers
8088	Xyplex
8089	Xyplex
808A	Xyplex

HEX	Description
809B	Kinetics Ethertalk-Appletalk over Ethernet
809C	Datability
809D	Datability
809E	Datability
809F	Spider Systems, Ltd. (England)
80A3	Nixdorf Computer (West Germany)
80A4-80B3	Siemens Gammasonics Inc.
80C0	Digital Communication Associates
80C1	Digital Communication Associates
80C2	Digital Communication Associates
80C3	Digital Communication Associates
80C6	Pacer Software
80C7	Applitek Corporation
80C8-80CC	Integraph Corporation
80CD	Harris Corporation
80CE	Harris Corporation
80CF-80D2	Taylor Inst.
80D3	Rosemount Corporation
80D4	Rosemount Corporation
80D5	IBM SNA Services over Ethernet
80DD	Varian Associates
80DE	Integrated Solutions TRFS (Transparent Remote File System)
80DF	Integrated Solutions
80E0-80E3	Allen-Bradley
80E4-80F0	Datability
80F2	Retix

Protocol Types

Ethernet Protocol Types

HEX	Description
80F3	Kinetics, AppleTalk ARP (AARP)
80F4	Kinetics
80F5	Kinetics
80F7	Apollo Computer
80FF-8103	Wellfleet Communications
8107	Symbolics Private
8108	Symbolics Private
8109	Symbolics Private
8130	Waterloo Microsystems
8131	VG Laboratory Systems
8137	Novell (old) NetWare IPX (ECONFIG E Option)
8138	Novell
8139-813D	KTI
9000	Loopback (Configuration Test Protocol)
9001	Bridge Communications XNS Systems Management
9002	Bridge Communications TCP/IP Systems Management
9003	Bridge Communications
FF00	BBN BITAL LANBridge cache wakeup

APPENDIX C

Troubleshooting

In this Appendix

- Communication Related Issues
- LAN Related Issues
- Diagnostics and Performance Tools
 - Verification
 - Statistics
 - System Reports

Communication Related Issues

Excessive Triggered Update Events on the Events screen

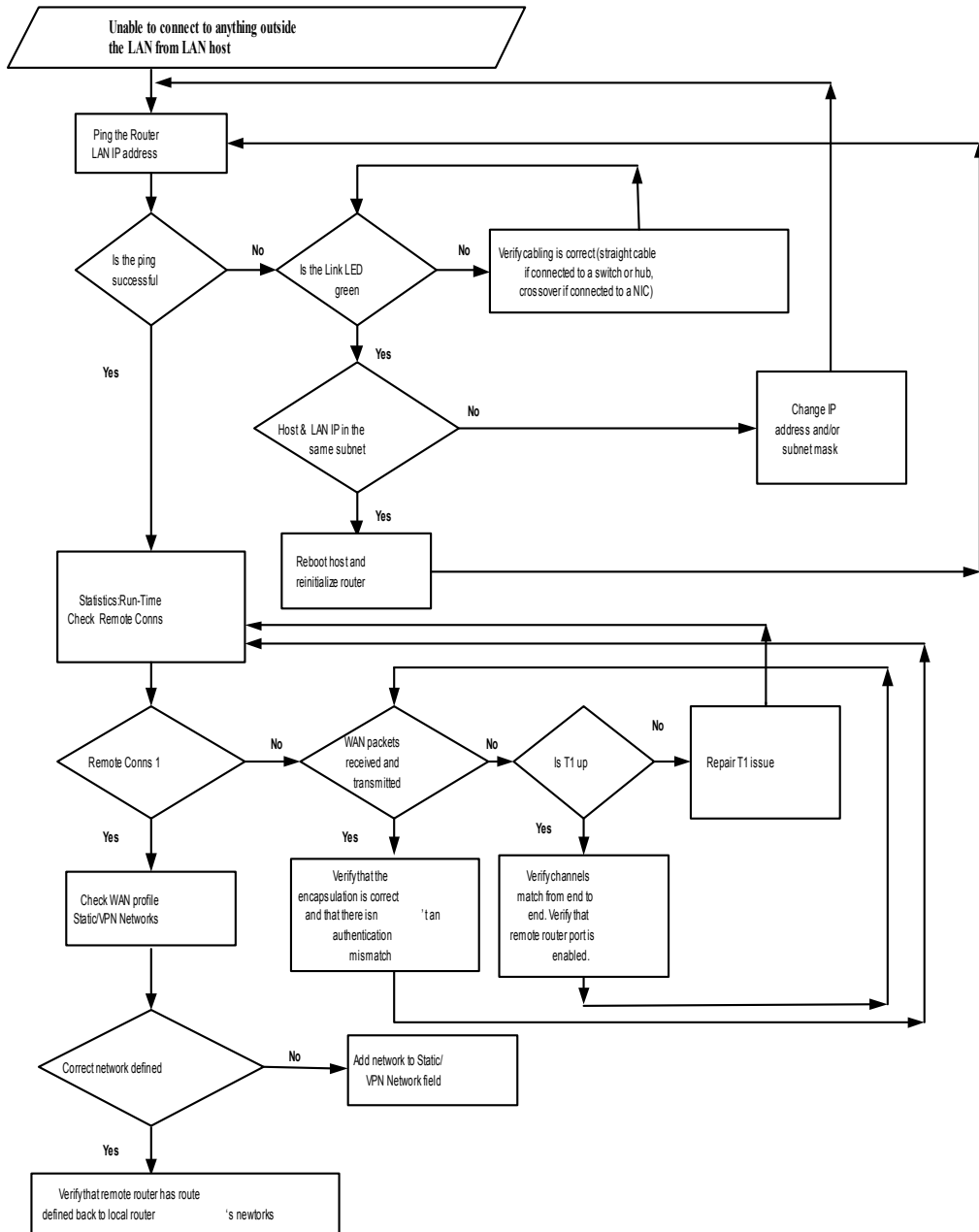
This generally is an indication that the network is changing due to the addition or deletion of hardware. Once the information has been exchanged, these events should subside. If this continues, it may indicate that the number of networks or servers on the LAN exceed the Router's table capacity. Set the LAN NETWORK UPDATES field, located on the *Local Profile window* to <Send> or <Neither> and then statically configure the appropriate networks.

Excessive triggered update events may also be the result of information advertised to the Router by a Remote Unit. If this is the case, restrict advertising on the remote unit see, *Chapter 5, Profile Directory:Remote Profile*.

LAN Related Issues

Unable to add data filters, advertise networks or create static route entries

The Router software will accommodate a maximum of 150 filters. Data filters, such as address, custom or protocol filters, networks advertised to no remotes, firewall filter rules and all static route entries are all considered filters. If you have been able to add filters in the past, but are no longer able to do so, this is an indication that the maximum limit has been reached. We suggest that you review all created data filters, advertised networks and static route entries and eliminate those that are no longer applicable. See *Chapter 4, LAN (Local) Profile Setup*.



Unable to access the Local (LAN) Router unit via Telnet

First, verify that the local Router was given an IP Address that is on the same network as the workstation. Since Telnet uses the IP protocol, establish that IP is functioning correctly by “pinging” the local unit from the workstation or by pinging the workstation from the local unit. Pinging will verify that there is communication between the workstation and the Router. Since you are unable to Telnet into the local unit, you will need to connect the local unit to a workstation using the Async port. Once you are connected to the local unit, refer to *Chapter 7, Ping Utility*. The inability to ping from one device to the other indicates a problem with IP or possibly the Telnet software. Refer to your Telnet documentation for more information.

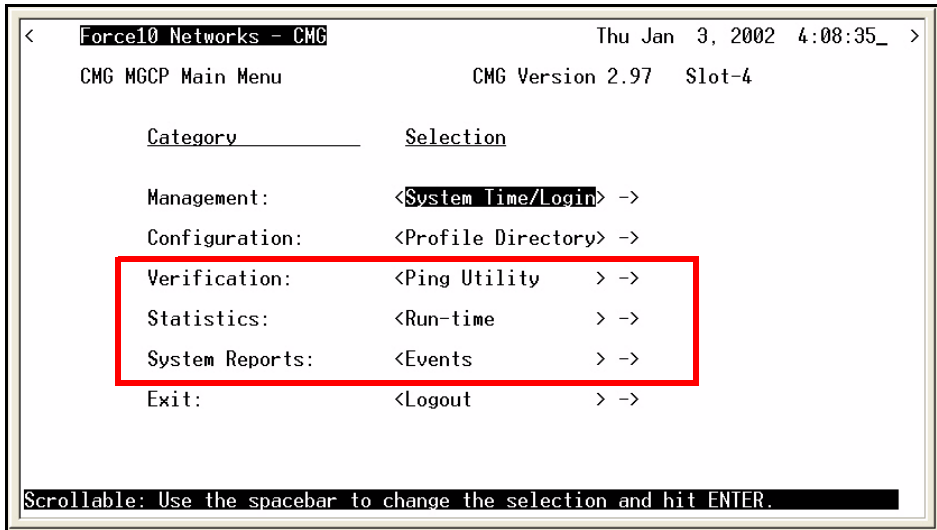
Unable to access a remote unit via Telnet

Refer to the instructions given above in **Unable to access the local unit via Telnet**. In addition, make sure that the workstation trying to Telnet, as well as the IP and ARP packets are authorized to communicate across the WAN. Review the **FORWARD MODE** field setting as well as the enabled filters on both the local and remote units to verify that they are set up to communicate (refer to *Chapter 3, Configuration - Profile Directory*, *Chapter 4, LAN (Local) Profile Setup*, and *Chapter 5, Remote (WAN) Profile Overview*). Also, if the remote network is different, define the local unit’s IP Address as the default route for the workstation and make sure that there is a remote route to the remote’s network in the Network/Server table.

Be aware that if you establish a firewall filter and do not expressly permit Telnetting into this unit, you will be denied access.

Diagnostics and Performance Tools

The **Verification**, **Statistics** and **System Reports** features are instrumental in diagnosing and troubleshooting the Router card.



Verification

The Verification section may be used to identify suspected communication problems between the local and remote devices. Verification options are:

Ping Utility

Verifies the ability of the local unit to communicate by pinging remote or local devices. See *Ping Utility on page 7-2* for more information on this feature.

Trace Route

The Trace Route option is used to verify timely and reliable connections. The Trace Route utility determines the path a packet follows from source to destination. See *Trace Route on page 7-6* for more information on this feature.

Port Monitor

The Port Monitor is a diagnostic tool that is used to review the actual data being transmitted from, or received by the local Router. When the monitoring is started, a hexadecimal display of each transmission as it occurs is shown. See *Port Monitor on page 7-9* for more information on this feature.

NOTE: The Port Monitor decreases the throughput of the Router. It should only during installation and troubleshooting procedures, not during normal operation.

Statistics

Run-Time

The Run-Time is used to review data transmission information between the Local (LAN) unit and Remote (WAN) devices. This option allows you to review data transmission statistics to/from remote units. This data will help you to monitor the Router's connection/performance capabilities such as throughput, compression, and errors. See *Chapter 8, Statistics Window* for more information regarding this feature.

VoIP Channel View

Use this screen to review the overall configuration and operation of the 48 possible CMG voice channels and of calls to the attached FXS endpoints. See *Chapter 8, Statistics Window* for more information regarding this feature.

Priority Queue

The Priority Queue window displays statistics for the CMG Priority Output Queues. This window will display statistics for the LocalUnit, and all Remotes. See *Chapter 8, Statistics Window* for more information regarding this feature.

System Reports

The System Reports menu presents data that may be useful in identifying WAN communication problems.

Events

The Events listing offers on-going historical activity for the Router, while the Alarm listing indicates events that suggest further investigation. See *Events on page 9-2* for more information regarding this feature.

Alarms

This screen provides a listing of any Alarms that have occurred on the Router. When an Alarm is triggered, the Router LED (labeled CRD) will display a red indicator light, which will stay on until the Alarm is cleared. Each Alarm is listed separately and the Count field will display a value of 1. See *Alarms on page 9-4* for more information regarding this feature.

Network/Servers

By sending out IPX and IP RIP (Routing Information Protocol) and IPX SAP (Service Advertising Protocol) packets and monitoring RIP and SAP packets from other devices, the Router will learn about other servers and networks. The Router will constantly monitor RIP and SAP packets to ensure that the status of the network or server has changed. Should a RIP or SAP packet indicate a change in status, the Router would update the data in the table and send the information to all enabled remotes to exchange the updated data. See *Networks/Servers on page 9-6* for more information regarding this feature.

Address Tables

The MAC Address and IP Address Tables, along with Network Tables are used to determine if and where the Router should send packets. See *Address Tables on page 9-11* for more information regarding this feature.

Alarms

Identify Alarm

Alarm indicators

- Router LEDs - When an Alarm is triggered, the Router LED (labeled CRD) displays a red indicator light that stays on until the Alarm is cleared

The following chart describes the LEDs.



LED	State	Description
CRD	Off	Loss of power
	Green	No current alarms
	Red	Alarm state active. See alarm log for cause
	Red Flashing	Self-test or Boot in-process
VOIP	Yellow Flashing	Card is saving data to flash RAM, do not power down
	Off	No active VoIP calls or if the MGCP protocol is optioned down
	Green	Active VoIP calls
	Red	Call agent unreachable
LNK	Yellow	Insufficient VoIP resources to complete call or during initialization process
	Off	No ethernet link
	Green	Good ethernet link
	Green	10 Mb ethernet
10/100	Green	100 Mb ethernet
	Off	No ethernet transmit activity
	Green	Ethernet transmit activity
	Yellow	Current ethernet transmit collision
TX	Off	No current ethernet receive activity
	Green	Current ethernet receive activity

Display Alarms

To display Router alarms:

On the Main Menu, **System Reports** option select **<Alarms - >**, or use the **[SPACEBAR]** to scroll to Alarms if not displayed.

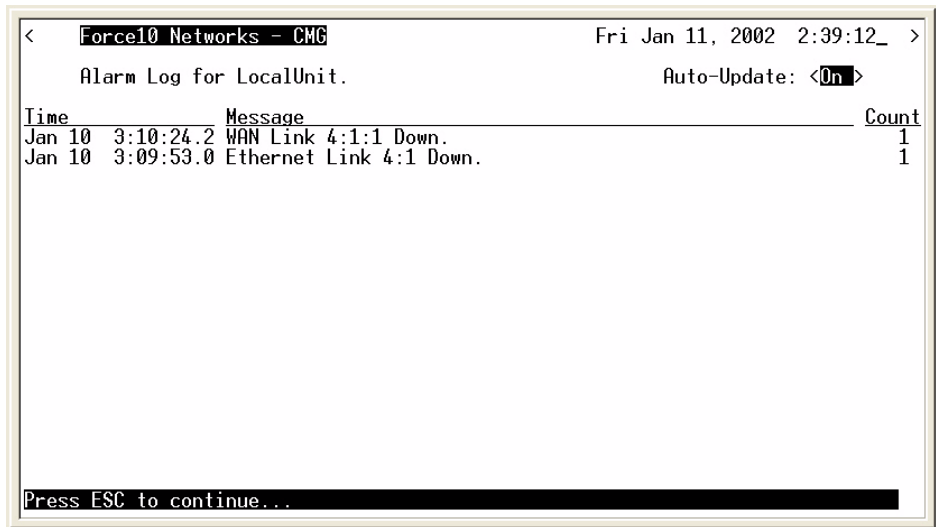
```
< Force10 Networks - CMG                               Fri Jan 11, 2002  2:38:26_ >
CMG MGCP Main Menu                                     CMG Version 2.97  Slot-4

  Category_____  Selection

Management:        <System Time/Login> ->
Configuration:     <Profile Directory> ->
Verification:      <Ping Utility   > ->
Statistics:         <Run-time       > ->
System Reports:    <Alarms         > ->
Exit:              <Logout         > ->

Scrollable: Use the spacebar to change the selection and hit ENTER.
```

This Window provides a listing of any Alarms that have occurred on the Router. Each Alarm is listed separately and the Count field will display a value of 1. See *Alarms on page 9-4* for more information regarding this feature.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Force10 Networks - CMG" with a timestamp of "Fri Jan 11, 2002 2:39:12_". The window displays the "Alarm Log for LocalUnit." and an "Auto-Update: <On>" status. A table lists two alarms with columns for Time, Message, and Count.

Time	Message	Count
Jan 10 3:10:24.2	WAN Link 4:1:1 Down.	1
Jan 10 3:09:53.0	Ethernet Link 4:1 Down.	1

At the bottom of the window, a black bar contains the text "Press ESC to continue..."

Clear Alarm

Once an alarm is identified then the process of clearing it can begin.

- Silence Alarm, if necessary (Alarm Cut Off CLI command: **aco**)
- Check Connection
- Check Cable, replace if necessary
- Check hardware and replace if necessary
- Call Customer Service

Troubleshooting

Alarms

GLOSSARY

Algorithm

A formula or set of steps for solving a particular problem. To be an algorithm, a set of rules must be unambiguous and have a clear stopping point.

Annex D

A frame relay standard extension dealing with the communication and signaling between customer premises and equipment and frame relay network equipment for the purpose of querying network status information.

B8ZS

Bipolar 8-Zero Substitution, a coding scheme that maintains ones density.

bandwidth

The amount of data that can travel through a channel in a given period of time. Bandwidth is usually measured in cycles per second (hertz) or in bits per second (BPS). The larger the bandwidth, the more information the network can handle. ISDN is usually 64KB, 128KB or 256KB. ASDL and DSL are generally faster than ISDN and sometimes faster than cable. Cable connections are usually 500KB or 1MB. T1 is 1.5MB and T3 is 45MB.

bit

Contraction of the words “binary” and “digit”.

bps

Bits per second

bridge

A bridge is any hardware device that connects two physically distinct network segments, usually at a lower network layer than would a router, however the two terms are often interchanged. A device that connects two local-area networks (LANs), or two segments of the same LAN. The two LANs being connected can be alike or dissimilar. Unlike routers, bridges are protocol independent. They simply forward packets without analyzing and re-routing messages. Consequently, they're faster than routers, but also less versatile.

Challenge Handshake Authorization Protocol (CHAP)

A strong authentication method used with PPP for user login. A type of authentication in which the authentication agent (typically a network server) sends the client program a key to be used to encrypt the user name and password. This enables the user name and password to be transmitted in an encrypted form to protect them against eavesdroppers. When using CHAP, the user name/password is sent encrypted over the connection, preventing sniffing. See also PAP.

CLI

Command Line Interface

CMG

Customer Media Gateway.

CODEC

CODEC stands for CODer-DECoder. The CODEC converts voice signals from their analog form to digital signals for digital transmission, and then converts those digital signals back to analog so you may hear the call.

Command Line

The command line is where you enter MS-DOS commands.

CSU

Channel Service Unit. The first device encountered by a T1 line entering a facility. It protects the equipment beyond it from damage due to disturbances on the T1 line and regenerates the T1 signal to meet T1 specifications.

DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. DHCP is a network configuration that allows maintenance to be performed from a central site rather than by end users.

DTMF	Dual Tone Multi-Frequency is the system used by touch-tone telephones. DTMF assigns a specific sound frequency, or tone, to each key so that it can easily be identified by a monitoring microprocessor. That frequency is then translated into a usable analog or digital signal. This is commonly known as Touch Tone.
Ethernet	Ethernet is a particular network topology and protocol, especially useful in LANs. It comes in various speeds and is often regarded as THE current technology for general network direct connection. The current connectivity is generally considered to be 10Base-T or 100Base-T, while the backbone, if one is used, is coaxial cable or Fiber optics. There is also a 1000Base-T for certain specialty copper joining situations.
filter	An operating parameter used with routers that can be set to block the transfer of packets from one LAN to another.
firewall	A system designed to prevent unauthorized access to or from a private network. Firewalls can be implemented in both hardware and software, or a combination of both. Firewalls are frequently used to prevent unauthorized Internet users from accessing private networks connected to the Internet, especially intranets. All messages entering or leaving the intranet pass through the firewall, which examines each message and blocks those that do not meet the specified security criteria.
frame	A fragment of data that is packaged into a frame format, which comprises a header, payload, and trailer.
frame relay	A packet-switching protocol for connecting devices on a Wide Area Network (WAN). Frame Relay networks in the U.S. support data transfer rates at T1 (1.544 Mbps) and T3 (45 Mbps) speeds. Most telephone companies now provide Frame Relay service for customers who want connections at 56 Kbps to T1 speeds. However, it is being replaced in some areas by faster technologies, such as ATM.
gateway	A link from one computer system to a different computer system.
GMT	Greenwich Mean Time.

GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation. GRE simply provides for the encapsulation of one data packet inside another data packet. This is a basic operation performed by tunnel servers when tunneling through the Internet in order to provide a secure VPN.
hops	Each individual short trip that packets make from router to router, as they are routed to their destination.
host	A computer that allows users to communicate with other host computers on a network.
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force. IETF sets the technical standards that run on the Internet.
Internet Protocol (IP)	Internet Protocol, the method by which most Internet activity takes place. Members with access to TCP/IP through a SLIP or PPP connection can connect to many ISP services in this manner. As the name implies, it is a protocol for network activity. Most current networks support some sort of TCP or IP directly or indirectly.
IP address	A string of four numbers separated by periods (such as 111.22.3.144) used to represent a computer on the Internet. The format of the address is specified by the Internet Protocol in RFC 791. Each of the four number must be 255 or less; they may be 0.
IPX	Internet Packet eXchange. A LAN communications protocol used to move data between server and/or workstation programs running on different network nodes.
Local Area Network (LAN)	A group of computers at a single location (usually an office or home) that are connected by phone lines, network cables of various configurations or coaxial cable. Usually controlled and administered by a system or network administrator.
LCO	Local Connection Option. The LCO limits the types of CODECs proposed by the voice gateways.

LMI	Local Management Interface. A specification for the use of frame-relay products that define a method of exchanging status information between devices such as routers.
Loopback	A diagnostic test in which a signal is transmitted across a medium while the sending device waits for its return.
Media Access Control (MAC)	The lower of the two sub-layers of the data link layer defined by the IEEE. The MAC sub-layer handles access to shared media, such as whether token passing or contention will be used. The MAC contains the standardized data link layer address that is required for every port or device that connects to a LAN. Other devices in the network use these addresses to locate specific ports in the network and to create and update routing tables and data structures. MAC addresses are 6 bytes long and are controlled by the IEEE.
Mbps	Million Bits Per Second.
MCMP	Multi-Channel Multi-Point. MCMP is a circuit card that enables the support of up to six independent applications over a single multipoint digital facility. The MCMP capability can support up to 40 tributary DSUs, each optioned with an MCMP card.
Multilink PPP	Multilink Point-to-Point Protocol. A method where packet data traffic is spread across multiple serial WAN links in order to increase transmission speed.
NAT	Network Address Translation. An Internet standard that enables a local-area network (LAN) to use one set of IP addresses for internal traffic and a second set of addresses for external traffic. A NAT box located where the LAN meets the Internet makes all necessary IP address translations.
NTP	Network Time Protocol, developed to maintain a common sense of time among Internet hosts around the world. Many systems on the Internet run NTP, and have the same time (relative to Greenwich Mean Time).
PAP	Password Authentication Protocol. An authentication protocol that allows Point-to-Point Protocol peers to authenticate one another.

Ping	Packet InterNet Grouper. PING is a program used to test whether a particular network destination on the Internet is online (i.e. working) by repeatedly bouncing a “signal” off a specified address and seeing how long that signal takes to complete the round trip. No return signal - site is down or unreachable. Portion is returned - trouble with the connection.
Protocol	Procedure or set of rules.
Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)	Provides a standard means of encapsulating data packets sent over a single-channel WAN link. It is the standard WAN encapsulation protocol for the interoperability of bridges and routers.
PVC	Permanent Virtual Circuit. A PVC is a permanent channel connection between two ATM devices. PVC’s allow network transmissions to be started without having to first establish a connection with the end point ATM device. When a PVC is constructed, the end points of the connection will agree upon a path in which data will travel, and therefore agree upon the route that data will travel to reach its destination.
QoS	Quality of Service. QoS is a measure of the telecommunications (voice, data or video) service quality provided to a subscriber.
RADIUS	Remote Authentication Dial-In Service. RADIUS is a client/server-based authentication software system. The software supports remote access applications, allowing an organization to maintain user profiles in a centralized database residing on an authentication server which can be shared by multiple remote access servers.
RIP	Routing Information Protocol. RIP is based on distance vector algorithms that measure the shortest path between two points on a network, based on the addresses of the originating and destination devices. The shortest path is determined by the number of “hops” between those points. Each router maintains a routing table, or routing database, of known addresses and routes; each router periodically broadcasts the contents of its table to neighboring routers in order that the entire network can maintain a synchronized database.

RSIP	Realm-Specific Internet Protocol. RSIP is an IP address translation technique that is an alternative to NAT. RSIP lets an enterprise safeguard many private Internet addresses behind a single public Internet address.
RTCP	Real-Time Conferencing Protocol. Supports real-time conferencing for large groups on the internet. It has source identification and support for audio and video bridges/gateways. Supports multicast-to-unicast translators.
RTP	Realtime Transport Protocol. An IETF standard for streaming realtime multimedia over IP in packets. Supports transport of real-time data like interactive voice and video over packet switched networks.
SDP	Session Description Protocol. SDP is intended for the description of multimedia sessions over IP-based networks. Defined in RFC2327.
SNAP	Subnet Access Protocol. A version of the IEEE local area network logical link control frame similar to the more traditional data link level transmission frame that lets you use nonstandard higher-level protocols.
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol. SNMP is the most common method by which network managements applications can query a management agent using a supported MIB (Management Information Base). SNMP operates at the OSI application layer.
Spanning Tree Protocol	Spanning Tree Protocol is a link management protocol that provides path redundancy while preventing undesirable loops in the network. For an Ethernet network to function properly, only one active path can exist between two stations.
T1	Trunk Level 1. A digital transmission link with a total signaling speed of 1.544 Mbps. T1 is a standard for the digital transmission in North America.
TACACS+	Terminal Access Controller Access Control System.

telnet	An Internet standard protocol that enables a computer to function as a terminal working from a remote computer.
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol. A simplified version of FTP that transfers files but does not provide password protection or user-directory capability.
Trace Route	A software utility that traces a data packet from your computer to a distant Internet server.
Trunk	A communication line between two switching systems.
Voice over IP (VoIP)	An emerging technology that is, voice delivered using the Internet Protocol, is a term used in IP telephony for a set of facilities for managing the delivery of voice information using the Internet Protocol (IP). In general, this means sending voice information in digital form in discrete packets rather than in the traditional circuit committed protocols of the public switched telephone network (PSTN). A major advantage of VOIP and Internet telephony is that it avoids the tolls charged by ordinary telephone service.
VPN	Virtual Private Network. A network that is constructed by using public wires to connect nodes. For example, there are a number of systems that enable you to create networks using the Internet as the medium for transporting data. These systems use encryption and other security mechanisms to ensure that only authorized users can access the network and that the data cannot be intercepted.
WAN	Wide Area Network. A private long distance network that uses leased lines to connect computers or LANs. A wide area network is a linking of computers not physically attached through conventional network connectivity. Usually the WAN connection is a dedicated or high grade dial up phone link. It is often done with T1 or T3 connections but can also be through satellite or other technologies.

INDEX

Numerics

100T	
Full Duplex	4-64
Half Duplex	4-64
10T	
Full Duplex	4-64
Half Duplex	4-64
802.2	4-6
802.3	4-6

A

Access	6-12
Add a Firewall Filter (Local Profile)	4-33
Add a Firewall Filter (Remote Profile)	5-37
Address	6-12
Address Filter	
Device Name	4-30
MAC Address	4-30
Address Tables	
Auto-Update	9-13
Display	9-13
Learned From	9-13
Port Name	9-13
Adit	
Exiting	10-2, 10-3
Identification	
Default Router	6-4
IP Address	6-4
Name	6-4
Subnet Mask	6-4
IP Address	6-4

Name	6-4
Reinitializing	10-4
Subnet Mask	6-4
Admin	
Password	2-5
security level	2-4
Advertise	
Network/Server	4-40, 4-43
Selected Items	4-43
Setup Advertisement	4-43
AIS Feature	3-54
Alarm	4-56
Alarms	A-5
Auto-Update	9-5
Count	9-5
Message	9-5
Time	9-5
Annex D	Glossary-1
Authenticate Events	A-3
Authentication	5-18
by Remote	3-10
of Remote	3-11
Protocol PAP	3-10
Auto	
Logout Timer	2-5
Negotiate	4-64
Update	8-3, 8-7, 8-11, 9-5, 9-13

- B**
- B8ZS Glossary-1
 - Basic Configuration
 - Overview 6-2
 - Remote Adit Profile 6-9
 - Routing Protocol/Security 6-5
 - Setup Complete 6-13
 - SNMP Configuration 6-12
 - WAN Interface Connections 6-7
 - Basic VoIP Setup 11-3, 11-6
 - Bipolar 8 Zero Substitution Glossary-1
 - Bit Glossary-1
 - bps Glossary-1
 - Bridge
 - Forward Delay 3-20, 3-23
 - Hello Time 3-20
 - Max Age 3-20
 - Priority 3-20, 4-59, 5-50
- C**
- CHAP 3-10
 - Clear Totals
 - All 8-3
 - LAN 8-3
 - WAN 8-3
 - CLI Glossary-2
 - Code Load 2-12
 - Collision 4-56
 - Hi Threshold 4-56
 - Lo Threshold 4-56
 - Command Line Glossary-2
 - Community Name 3-14
 - Compression 5-18
 - Ratio to/from WAN 8-5
 - Config
 - Load 2-12
 - Password 2-5
 - security level 2-4
 - Config Upload/Download 2-12
 - Configuration 11-1
 - connecting
 - to the router 1-6
 - with Telnet 1-6
 - Continuous
 - Ping 7-4
 - Ping Status
 - Response Count 7-5
 - Timeout Count 7-5
 - Country specific ringer tones 1-2
 - CSU Glossary-2
- D**
- Daylight Savings Time Adjustment 2-5
 - Default Router 5-12
 - Defining
 - Address Filters 4-30
 - Custom Filters 4-26
 - Protocol Filters 4-28
 - Device Name 5-35
 - Devices, Local 4-37, 5-41
 - DHCP Glossary-2
 - DHCP Server 4-49, 4-51, 4-52
 - DHCP Server/BOOTP Relay
 - DHCP Server 4-49, 4-51, 4-52
 - Domain Name 4-49
 - Domain Name Servers 4-50
 - Lease Duration 4-50
 - Name Server (NBNS) 4-50
 - NetBIOS Name Server 4-50
 - NetBIOS Node Type 4-50
 - Node Type 4-50, 4-51
 - Number 4-49
 - Scope 4-50
 - DHCP Server/Client/Relay 4-46
 - Diagnostics and Performance Tools C-5
 - Dial Plan 3-52
 - Display 9-13
 - DLCI 6-11

-
- DNS
 - Resolver 3-26
 - Server 3-18
 - DNS Proxy 3-17
 - DNS Server 3-18
 - Domain Name 3-18
 - Site 3-18
 - Domain Name 3-18, 4-49
 - E**
 - Enhanced Security 2-6
 - Esc Key 1-3
 - Eth II 4-6
 - Events 9-2
 - Authenticate A-3
 - Count 9-3
 - Message 9-3
 - Time 9-3
 - Triggered A-4
 - User A-2
 - Excessive Triggered Update Events C-2
 - Exit 10-1
 - Logout 10-2
 - Reinitialize 10-3
 - F**
 - Facility 3-25
 - Fields
 - Edit 1-4
 - Scroll 1-4
 - Select 1-4
 - Filter 5-47, Glossary-3
 - Filter Network/Server 5-43
 - Filter 5-47
 - Learn 5-47
 - Name 5-47
 - Network 5-46
 - Selected Items
 - Filter/Learn 5-45
 - Setup 5-45
 - Type 5-46
 - Filters 4-22
 - Define 4-25
 - Define Filter 4-25
 - Defining Custom 4-26
 - Filter Name 4-25
 - Filter Type 4-25
 - Firewall (Local Profile) 4-9, 4-32
 - Firewall (Remote Profile) 5-15, 5-36
 - Forward Mode 4-24
 - Network/Server 5-15
 - Setup 4-9
 - Source/Destination 4-25
 - Type 4-25
 - Firewall
 - Filters 11-16
 - Firewall (Local Profile)
 - Filters 4-9, 4-32
 - Local Device(s) 4-37
 - Local IP Address/Network 4-38
 - Packets which Match this Rule 4-39
 - Remote IP Address/Network 4-38
 - Rule #1 4-36
 - Services 4-36
 - Firewall (Remote Profile)
 - Filters 5-15, 5-36
 - Local Device(s) 5-41
 - Local IP Address/Network 5-41
 - Packets which Match this Rule 5-42
 - Remote IP Address/Network 5-41
 - Rule #1 5-39
 - Services 5-40
 - FW Allow Frags 5-13
 - Forward
 - Mode 4-24
 - Forwarded to WAN 8-5
 - Frame Glossary-3
 - Relay 3-6

Index

- Type 9-10
 - 802.2 4-6, 4-8
 - 802.3 4-6, 4-8
 - Eth II 4-6
 - Ethernet II 4-8
 - SNAP 4-6
- G**
- Gateway 4-16, 9-9
- GRE Tunnel 5-7
- H**
- Help 1-5
- Hops 4-16, 9-9, Glossary-4
- I**
- Installation 1-1, 1-2
 - ringer tones 1-2
- IP 6-10
 - Address 5-35, 6-11, 7-3, 7-5
 - Firewall (Local Profile)
 - Significant Bits 4-38
 - Firewall (Remote Profile)
 - Significant Bits 5-41
- IPX 6-10
 - Router 4-17, 9-10
 - Server Advertising 4-44
 - Name 4-45
 - Network 4-45
 - Selected Items 4-45
 - Type 4-45
- L**
- LAN 4-56, 8-3
 - Network Updates 4-6
 - Packet
 - Errors 8-4
 - Received 8-4
 - Totals 8-4
 - Transmitted 8-4
 - LAN Collision Threshold 4-9, 4-54
 - Alarm 4-56
 - Collision 4-56
 - Hi Threshold 4-56
 - Lo Threshold 4-56
 - LAN 4-56
 - Sample Interval 4-56
 - LAN IP 4-8
 - Default Router 4-8
 - IP Address 4-8
 - Subnet Mask 4-8
 - LAN IPX 4-8
 - 802.2 Ext. Network 4-8
 - 802.3 Ext. Network 4-8
 - Ethernet II Ext. Network 4-8
 - LAN Port Tests
 - Continuous Ping Status
 - Response Count 7-5
 - Timeout Count 7-5
 - IP Address 7-3
 - Operation
 - Single Ping 7-4
 - Single Ping Status 7-4
 - IP Address 7-5
 - MAC Address 7-5
 - Result 7-5
 - Learn 5-47
 - Lease Duration 4-50
 - Level 3-25
 - Link Speed 4-10, 4-63
 - 100T
 - Full Duplex 4-64
 - Half Duplex 4-64
 - 10T
 - Full Duplex 4-64
 - Half Duplex 4-64
 - AutoNegotiate 4-64
 - LMI Glossary-5

-
- Local
 - Device(s) 4-37, 5-41
 - IP Address 5-29
 - Security Server 3-11
 - Local IP Address/Network 4-38, 5-41
 - Significant Bits 4-38, 5-41
 - Local Profile 4-1, 4-4, 4-6
 - Advertise Network/Server 4-40
 - DHCP Server/Client/Relay 4-46
 - Filters 4-22
 - Firewall Filters 4-9, 4-32
 - Frame Type 4-6
 - 802.2 4-6
 - 802.3 4-6
 - Eth II 4-6
 - SNAP 4-6
 - LAN Collision Threshold 4-54
 - LAN Network Updates 4-6
 - Link Speed 4-63
 - LocalUnit 4-6
 - Secondary IP Address 4-60
 - Setup 4-9
 - Filters 4-9
 - LAN Collision Threshold 4-9
 - Link Speed 4-10
 - Spanning Tree 4-57
 - Static Addresses 4-18
 - Static Networks 4-11
 - Location 6-12
 - login setup 2-3
 - Logout 10-2
 - Loopback Glossary-5
- M**
- MAC Address 4-30, 5-35, 7-5
 - Management
 - Overview 2-2
 - Window 2-1
 - Management Overview 2-2
 - Mask
 - Subnet 4-16
 - Mbps Glossary-5
 - Metric 4-16, 5-23, 5-25, 9-9
 - MGCP 3-34
 - MGCP Lockout 3-54
 - Mode
 - Forward 4-24
- N**
- Name 3-14, 5-47, 6-12
 - Device 4-20, 4-30
 - Remote 8-5
 - Server (NBNS) 4-50
 - Names 9-9
 - NAT
 - Addresses 11-18
 - Bypass Subnets 5-30
 - Gateway 5-8
 - IP Address 5-29
 - NAT/PAT 11-16
 - NetBIOS
 - Name Server 4-50
 - Node Type 4-50
 - Network 4-16, 4-43, 5-23, 5-25, 5-46
 - Time Protocol 3-21
 - Networks/Servers
 - Frame Type 9-10
 - Hops 9-9
 - Metric 9-9
 - Name 9-9
 - Network 9-9
 - Next Gateway 9-9
 - Next IPX Router 9-10
 - Ticks 9-10
 - Type 9-9
 - New Password 1-7

Index

- Next
 - Gateway 4-16, 9-9
 - IPX Router 4-17, 9-10
- Next Gateway
 - Static Networks
 - Next
 - Gateway 4-16
- Node Type 4-50, 4-51
- Number
 - Bytes to Display 7-10, 7-11
- O**
- Operation
 - Single Ping 7-4
- P**
- Packet
 - RIP 4-41
 - SAP 4-41
- Packets which match this rule 4-39, 5-42
- PAP 3-10, Glossary-5
- Password 1-7, 3-10, 3-11
- Ping Glossary-6
 - Continuous 7-4
 - single 7-4
 - Single Status 7-4
 - Utility 7-2
- Poll Counter 6-8
- Poll Interval 6-8
- Port
 - Monitor 7-9
 - Name 9-13
 - Number 6-7
- PPP 3-4, 3-6, 11-16
 - in Frame Relay 3-6
- Profile
 - Directory 4-4
 - Local 4-4
 - Name 6-10
- Remote 5-2
- Protocol 4-6, 5-6, 6-10, Glossary-6
 - Network Time 3-21
 - Spanning Tree 3-19, 4-57, 5-48
 - Types B-1
- PVC Glossary-6
- Q**
- Quality of Service 3-31
- R**
- Reboot
 - After Load Code 2-12
 - After Load Config 2-12
- Record
 - Configurable 4-4
- Reinitialize 10-3
- Remote
 - Connections 8-5
 - Name 7-10, 8-5
 - Security 5-14
- Remote Adit Profile 6-9
 - Profile Name 6-10
 - Protocol 6-10
 - IP 6-10
 - IPX 6-10
 - Other 6-10
- Remote IP Address/Network 4-38, 5-41
 - Significant Bits 4-38, 5-41
- Remote Profile 5-1, 5-2
 - Default Router 5-12
 - Filter Network/Server 5-15, 5-43
 - Firewall Filters 5-15, 5-36
 - FW Allow Frags 5-13
 - GRE Tunnel 5-7
 - Mode 5-6
 - NAT Bypass Subnets 5-30
 - NAT Gateway 5-8
 - Numbered 5-11

Protocol	5-6	SysLog	3-24
RemoteUnit	5-5	Trunk	3-4
Security/Options	5-14	Voice Channels	3-47
Security/SNMP	5-16	VoIP	3-42
Setup	5-14	Router Configuration	11-1
Spanning Tree	5-48	Basic VoIP Setup	11-3, 11-6
Static Addresses	5-14, 5-15, 5-32	Internet Connection using NAT	11-18
Static NAT Addresses	5-27	Internet Connection using PPP,	
Static/VPN Networks	5-19	NAT/PAT	11-16
Subnet Mask	5-11	Routing Protocol/Security	6-5
Trunk Port	5-51	RSIP Scheduler	3-35
WAN Network Updates	5-7	Rule #1 (Local Profile)	4-36
RemoteUnit	5-5	Rule #1 (Remote Profile)	5-39
Reports		Run-Time	8-2
Alarm Log	9-5	Auto-Update	8-3, 8-7, 8-11
Response Count	7-5	Clear Totals	8-3
Result	7-5	All	8-3
Ringer Tones	1-2	LAN	8-3
RIP	4-6, 4-11, 5-19, Glossary-6	WAN	8-3
Mode Receive	3-4	Comp. Ratio to/from WAN	8-5
Mode Send	3-4	Errors	8-4
Router	11-1	Forwarded to WAN	8-5
Router Card Profile	3-1	LAN Packet Totals	8-4
AIS Feature	3-54	Statistics	8-4
Configuration	3-2	Received	8-4
Dial Plan	3-52	Remote Connections	8-5
DNS Proxy	3-17	Remote's Name	8-5
DNS Resolver	3-26	Throughput to/from WAN	8-5
MGCP	3-34	Transmitted	8-4
MGCP Lockout	3-54	WAN Packet Totals	8-4
Network Time Protocol	3-21		
Overview	3-2		
Quality of Service	3-31		
RIP			
Mode Receive	3-4		
Mode Send	3-4		
Security	3-8		
SNMP	3-12		
Spanning Tree Protocol	3-19		
		S	
		Sample Interval	4-56
		SAP	4-6
		Scope	4-50
		Secondary IP Address	4-60
		Security	3-8
		Address	3-11
		Authentication by Remote	3-10

Index

Authentication of Remote	3-11	SNAP	4-6
Local Security Server	3-11	SNMP	3-12, Glossary-7
Password	3-11	Community Name	3-14
Server	5-18	Configuration	6-12
Type	3-11	SYS	
User ID	3-10	Contact	3-13
Security Level		Location	3-13
1 - View	2-4	Name	3-13
2 - Config	2-4	Trap Destination	
3 - Admin	2-4	Address	3-16
Security/Options	5-14	Location	3-16
Security/SNMP	3-14, 5-16	Name	3-16
Access	3-14	Trap Destinations	3-15
Address	3-14	SNMP Communities	
Authentication by Remote	5-18	Access	6-12
Community Name	3-14	Address	6-12
Compression	5-18	Name	6-12
Password	3-10	SNMP Configuration	
Security Server	5-18	SNMP Communities	6-12
Typical Data	5-18	SNMP Trap Destinations	6-12
Selected Items	5-45	SNMP Trap Destinations	
Server IP Address	3-25, 3-28	Address	6-12
Services (Local Profile)	4-36	Location	6-12
Services (Remote Profile)	5-40	Name	6-12
Set		Source/Destination	4-25
Poll Counter	6-8	Spanning Tree Protocol	3-19, 4-57, 5-48, Glossary-7
Poll Interval	6-8	Bridge Forward Delay	3-20, 3-23
Setup		Bridge Hello Time	3-20
Advertisement	4-43	Bridge Max Age	3-20
Local Profile	4-9	Bridge Priority	3-20, 4-59, 5-50
Setup Complete	6-13	Start	
Significant Bits	4-38, 5-41	Basic Configuration	6-2
Single Ping	7-4	IP Address	4-49
Single Ping Status	7-4	Monitor	7-10
Continuous Ping	7-4	Static	
IP Address	7-5	Address	4-18, 4-35, 5-14, 5-15, 5-29, 5-31, 5-34, 5-45, 5-53
MAC Address	7-5		
Result	7-5		
Site	3-18		

NetworksRemote Profile	
Static Networks	5-14
Setup	5-35
Static Addresses	5-32
Device Name	4-20, 5-35
IP Address	4-21, 5-35
MAC Address	4-20, 5-35
Setup Static	4-20, 5-35
IP Address	4-20
MAC Address	4-20
Static NAT Addresses	5-27, 11-18
Local IP Address	5-29
NAT IP Address	5-29
Static Networks	4-11, 4-17
Hops	4-16
Metric	4-16
Network	4-16
Next Gateway	4-16
Subnet Mask	4-16
Ticks	4-16
Static/VPN Networks	5-19
Metric	5-23, 5-25
Network	5-23, 5-25
Subnet Mask	5-23, 5-25
Statistics	
Run-Time	8-2
Auto-Update	8-3, 8-7, 8-11
Clear Totals	8-3
VoIP Channel View	8-6, 8-10
Window	8-1
Subnet Mask	4-16, 5-23, 5-25, 6-11
SYS	
Contact	3-13
Location	3-13
Name	3-13
SysLog	3-25, 3-26, 3-28, 3-31
System Log Message Service	3-24
System	
Date and Time	2-4
Log Message Service	3-26, 3-31
Reports Window	9-1
Time/Login	
Config Password	2-5
System	
Date and Time	2-4
System Reports	
Address Tables	
Auto-Update	9-13
Display	9-13
Learned From	9-13
Port Name	9-13
Alarms	
Auto-Update	9-5
Count	9-5
Message	9-5
Time	9-5
Events	9-2
Count	9-3
Message	9-3
Time	9-3
Networks/Servers	9-10
Frame Type	9-10
Hops	9-9
Metric	9-9
Name	9-9
Network	9-9
Next Gateway	9-9
Ticks	9-10
Type	9-9
System Time/Login	2-3, 2-4
Admin Password	2-5
Auto-Logout Timer	2-5
Daylight Savings Time Adjustment	2-5
Enhanced Security	2-6
View Password	2-5

Index

- T**
- T1 Glossary-7
 - Tab Key 1-3
 - Telnet Glossary-8
 - Telnet Session 1-6
 - TFTP Glossary-8
 - TFTP Upload/Download 2-12
 - Throughput to/from WAN 8-5
 - Ticks 4-16, 9-10
 - Time
 - Login Setup 2-4
 - time setup 2-3
 - Timeout Count 7-5
 - Trace Route 7-6
 - Trap Destinations 3-15
 - Triggered Events A-4
 - Troubleshooting C-1
 - Communication Related Issues C-2
 - LAN Related Issues C-2
 - Trunk Glossary-8
 - Trunk Port 5-51
 - WAN Connection 3-5
 - WAN Connection Type 3-6
 - Type 5-46
 - Typical Data 5-18
- U**
- Unable to
 - Access a Remote Unit via Telnet C-4
 - Access the Local Adit Unit via Telnet ... C-4
 - Add Data Filters C-2
 - Advertise Networks C-2
 - Create Static Route Entries C-2
 - Upload/Download 2-8
 - TFTP Setup 2-12
 - User Events A-1, A-2
 - Alarms A-5
 - User ID 3-10, 5-18
- V**
- Verification
 - Ping Utility 7-2
 - Port Monitor 7-9
 - Trace Route 7-6
 - Window 7-1
 - Verification Window 7-1
 - View Password 2-5
 - view, security level 2-4
 - Voice Channels 3-47
 - VoIP 3-42
 - VoIP Channel View 8-6, 8-10
- W**
- WAN 8-3
 - Connection 6-7
 - Connection Type 3-6, 6-7
 - Frame Relay 3-6
 - PPP 3-6
 - PPP in Frame Relay 3-6
 - Interface Connection
 - WAN Connection Type 6-7
 - Interface Connections 6-7
 - Port Number 6-7
 - WAN Connection 6-7
 - Monitor
 - Number of Bytes to Display 7-10
 - Remote Name 7-10
 - Start
 - Monitor 7-10
 - Network Updates 5-7
 - Packet
 - Errors 8-4
 - Received 8-4
 - Totals 8-4
 - Transmitted 8-4
 - Port Number 6-11
 - DLCI 6-11

Trunk	3-4
WAN Monitor	
Number of Bytes to Display	7-11

